

Modeling Soil Processes: Key challenges and new perspectives

Vereecken H.^{1,2}, Schnepf A.¹, Hopmans J.W.³, Javaux M.⁴, Or D.⁵, Roose T.⁶, Vanderborght J.^{1,2}, Young M.⁷, Amelung W.^{1,8}, Aitkenhead M.⁹, Allison S.D.¹⁰, Assouline S.¹¹, Baveye P.¹², Berli M.¹³, Brüggemann N.¹, Finke P.¹⁴, Flury M.¹⁵, Gaiser T.¹⁶, Govers G.¹⁷, Ghezzehei T.¹⁸, Hallett P.¹⁹, Hendricks Franssen H.J.^{1,2}, Heppell, J.⁶, Horn, R.²⁰, Huisman J.A.^{1,2}, Jacques D.²¹, Jonard F.¹, Kollet, S.^{1,2}, Lafolie F.²², Lamorski K.²³, Leitner, D.²⁴, McBratney A.²⁵, Minasny B.²⁵, Montzka C.¹, Nowak W.²⁶, Pachepsky Y.²⁷, Padarian J.²⁵, Romano N.²⁸, Roth K.²⁹, Rothfuss Y.¹, Rowe E.C.³⁰, Schwen A.³¹, Šimůnek J.³², Van Dam J.³³, van der Zee S.E.A.T.M.^{33,34}, Vogel H.J.³⁵, Vrugt J.A.^{36abc}, Wöhling T.^{37,38}, Young I.M.⁴⁰

1 Agrosphere Institute, IBG-3, Institute of Bio-geosciences, Forschungszentrum Jülich GmbH, Jülich, Germany

2 Centre for High-Performance Scientific Computing in Terrestrial Systems, HPSC TerrSys, Geoverbund ABC/J, Forschungszentrum Jülich GmbH, Germany

3 Department of Land, Air, and Water Resources, College of Agricultural and Environmental Sciences, University of California, Davis, CA 95616

4 Earth and Life Institute, Environmental Sciences, Université catholique de Louvain, Croix du Sud, 2, L7.05.02, 1348 Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium

5 Soil and Terrestrial Environmental Physics, ETH-Zürich, Universitätstrasse 16, CHN F 29.1.8092, Zürich

6 Bioengineering Sciences Research Group, Faculty of Engineering and Environment, University of Southampton, University Road, Southampton SO17 1BJ, UK

7 Bureau of Economic Geology, Jackson School of Geosciences, University of Texas at Austin

8 University of Bonn, INRES - Institute of Crop Science and Resource Conservation, Soil Science and Soil Ecology, Nußallee 13, 53115 Bonn, Germany

9 The James Hutton Institute, Craigiebuckler, Aberdeen AB15 8QH, UK

10 Ecology & Evolutionary Biology School of Biological Sciences, University of California, Irvine, USA

11 Department of Environmental Physics and Irrigation Institute of Soils, Water and Environment Sciences A.R.O - Volcani Center P.O. Box 6 Bet Dagan 50250, ISRAEL

12 Unité EcoSys, AgroParisTech-INRA, Université Paris-Saclay, Avenue Lucien Brétignières, Thiverval-Grignon F-78850, France.

13 Division of Hydrologic Science, Desert Research Institute, 215 Raggio Parkway Reno, NV 89512

36 14 Department of Geology and Soil Science, Ghent University, Krijgslaan 281 WE13, B9000 Ghent
37 Belgium
38 15 Soil Physics/Vadose Zone Hydrology, Department of Crop and Soil Sciences, Washington State
39 University, 2606 W Pioneer, Puyallup, WA 98371-4922,
40 16 University of Bonn Institute of Crop Science and Resource Conservation, Katzenburgweg 5, 53115
41 Bonn, Germany
42 17 Department of Earth and Environmental Sciences, Division of Geography, KU Leuven,
43 Celestijnenlaan 200E, 3001 Leuven, Belgium
44 18 Life and Environmental Science School of Natural Science, 5200 North Lake Road, Merced, CA
45 95343
46 19 Institute of Biological and Environmental Sciences, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, AB24
47 3UU, UK
48 20 Institute for Plant Nutrition and Soil Science, Hermann Rodewaldstr. 2, 24118 Kiel, Germany
49 21 Institute for Environment, Health and Safety, Belgian Nuclear Research Centre (SCK-CEN), Mol,
50 Belgium
51 22 INRA, UMR1114 EMMAH, F- 84914 Avignon Cedex 9, France
52 23 Institute of Agrophysics, Polish Academy of Sciences, Doświadczalna Str. 4, 20-290 Lublin,
53 Poland
54 24 University of Vienna, Computational Science Center, Oskar Morgenstern-Platz 1, 1090 Vienna,
55 Austria
56 25 Department of Environmental Sciences, The University of Sydney, NSW 2006, Australia
57 26 Universität Stuttgart, Institut für Wasser- und Umweltsystemmodellierung (IWS), Lehrstuhl für
58 Stochastische Simulation und Sicherheitsforschung für Hydrosysteme
59 27 Environmental Microbial and Food Safety Laboratory, USDA ARS Beltsville Agricultural
60 Research Center, Beltsville, MD 20705, USA
61 28 University of Naples Federico II, Department of Agronomy, AFBE Division, Via Università' n.
62 100, 80055 Portici, Napoli, Italy
63 29 Institute of Environmental Physics, Im Neuenheimer Feld 229, 69120 Heidelberg, Germany
64 30 Centre for Ecology and Hydrology, Environment Centre Wales, Deiniol Road, Bangor, LL57
65 2UW, UK
66 31 Institut für Hydraulik und landeskulturelle Wasserwirtschaft, Nußdorfer Lände 11, 1190 Wien
67 32 Department of Environmental Sciences, University of California Riverside, Riverside, CA, 92521
68 33 WU Environmental Sciences, Soil Physics and Land Management, Post address PO Box 47,
69 6700AA Wageningen, The Netherlands
70 34 School of Chemistry, Monash University, Melbourne VIC 3800, Australia
71 35 Department Soil Physics, UFZ, Theodor-Lieser-Straße 4, 06120 Halle (Saale), Germany

72 36a,b,c a) Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of California, Irvine,
 73 California, USA, b) Department of Earth System Science, University of California, Irvine, California,
 74 USA, c) Institute for Biodiversity and Ecosystem dynamics, University of Amsterdam, The
 75 Netherlands
 76 37 Technische Universität Wöhling Dresden, Department of Hydrology, 01069 Dresden, Germany.
 77 38 Water & Earth System Science (WESS) Competence Cluster, University of Tübingen, Institute for
 78 Geoscience, 72076 Tübingen, Germany
 79 39 Lincoln Agritech Ltd., Ruakura Research Centre, Hamilton 3240, New Zealand.
 80 40 School of Environmental & Rural Science, University of New England, Australia

81

82 **1. Introduction 5**

83 1.1 A brief history of soil modeling 5

84 1.2 The state-of-the-art of modeling soil processes 6

85 1.3 The role of soil modeling in quantifying ecosystem services 7

86 **2 Modeling soil supporting and degrading processes 10**

87 2.1 Supporting processes 10

88 2.1.1 Soil formation 10

89 2.1.2 Water cycling 11

90 2.1.3 Nutrient cycling 13

91 2.1.4 Biological activity 16

92 2.2 Soil degrading processes 18

93 2.2.1 Salinization and Alkalinization 18

94 2.2.2 Erosion 19

95 2.2.3 Compaction 21

96 **3 Soil modeling and ecosystem services 23**

97 3.1 Regulating services 23

98 3.1.1 Climate regulation 23

99 3.1.2 Buffering and filtering 25

100 3.1.3 Recycling of anthropogenic waste 27

101 3.2 Provisioning services 28

102	3.2.1	Biomass production for food, fiber and energy	28
103	3.2.2	Soil physical support.....	30
104	3.2.3	Soil and biological habitat	32
105	4	Challenges in dealing with soil heterogeneity and uncertainty	33
106	4.1	Heterogeneity: aggregate to landscape, microbe to forest, grains to ecology.....	34
107	4.2	Formalisms for considering uncertainties related to model choice.....	37
108	4.3	Does local-scale model complexity matter for predictions at larger scales?.....	39
109	5	Numerical approaches and model data integration	41
110	5.1	Numerical approaches.....	41
111	5.2	Novel optimization methods and their application to soil modeling.....	43
112	5.3	Data assimilation	45
113	5.4	Bayesian approach for model-data integration	47
114	6	Modern sources of spatial and temporal data for soil modeling	49
115	6.1	Informing soil models using remote sensing.....	50
116	6.2	Proximal soil sensing, geographical databases of soil properties for soil-process modeling	53
117	6.3	Informing soil models using pedotransfer functions	56
118	6.4	Parametrizing models with non-destructive and high resolution water stable isotope data	
119		59	
120	7	Toward a soil modeling platform.....	61
121	7.1	Virtual soil platform.....	61
122	7.2	Model coupling approaches	63
123	7.3	Benchmarks and soil model inter-comparisons	64
124	7.4	Linking soil-modeling platforms with climate, ecology, and hydrology.....	65
125	7.5	Linking soil-modeling platforms with crop and biomass production.....	68
126	8	Summary and outlook.....	70
127			
128			
129			
130			
131			

132 **0. Abstract**

133 The remarkable complexity of soil and its importance to a wide range of ecosystem services presents
134 major challenges to the modeling of soil processes. Although major progress in soil models has
135 occurred in the last decades, models of soil processes remain disjointed between disciplines or
136 ecosystem services, with considerable uncertainty remaining in the quality of predictions and several
137 challenges that remain yet to be addressed. Firstly, there is a need to improve exchange of knowledge
138 and experience amongst the different disciplines in soil science and to reach out to other Earth science
139 communities. Secondly, the community needs to develop a new generation of soil models based on a
140 systemic approach comprising relevant physical, chemical, and biological processes to address critical
141 knowledge gaps in our understanding of soil processes and their interactions. Overcoming these
142 challenges will facilitate exchanges between soil modeling and climate, plant, and social science
143 modeling communities. It will allow us to contribute to preserve and improve our assessment of
144 ecosystem services and advance our understanding of climate-change feedback mechanisms, amongst
145 others, thereby facilitating and strengthening communication among scientific disciplines and society.
146 In this paper we review the role of modeling soil processes in quantifying key soil processes that shape
147 ecosystem services with focus on provisioning and regulating services. We then identify key
148 challenges in modeling soil processes including the systematic incorporation of heterogeneity and
149 uncertainty, the integration of data and models, and strategies for effective integration of knowledge
150 on physical, chemical and biological soil processes. We discuss how the soil modeling community
151 could best interface with modern modeling activities in other disciplines such as climate, ecology, and
152 plant research and how to weave novel observation and measurement techniques into soil models. We
153 propose to establish an international soil modeling consortium to coherently advance soil modeling
154 activities and foster communication with other Earth science disciplines. Such a consortium should
155 promote soil modeling platforms and data repository for model development, calibration and inter-
156 comparison essential for addressing contemporary challenges.

157

158 **1. Introduction**

159 **1.1 A brief history of soil modeling**

160 The quantitative description of physical, chemical and biological interactions in soil at multiple scales
161 and levels of refinement has been a long-standing goal and key challenge in soil science. The earliest
162 numerical and analytical models in the field of soil science date back to the last century and dealt
163 mainly with the simulation of water flow (e.g., Hanks and Bowers 1961; Rubin and Steinhardt 1963;
164 Whisler and Kulte 1965; Bresler and Hanks 1969; Van Keulen and Van Beek 1971), heat flow
165 (Wierenga and De Wit 1970), solute transport processes (Dutt and Tanji 1962; Lindstrom et al. 1967;
166 Bear 1972; Bresler 1973; Gerke and Vangenuchten 1993), soil organic carbon dynamics (Russell
167 1964; Russell 1975; Van Veen and Paul 1981), and nutrient dynamics (Kirkham and Bartholomew
168 1955; Cole et al. 1978). These models consisted mostly of analytical solutions of partial differential

169 equations for well-defined soils and porous media, numerical solutions of single partial differential
170 equations or conceptual models that were solved with analog or digital computers.

171
172 These first generation models that proliferated with the availability of the digital computer focused
173 primarily on physical and chemical processes without explicit consideration of biotic processes or
174 accounting for the role of soil structural related processes. One of the first models addressing the role
175 of soil structure in the decomposition of organic matter by micro-organisms was developed by Van
176 Veen and Paul (1981) and Van Veen et al. (1985) and reviewed in Van Veen and Kuikman (1990). An
177 early model that considered the role of soil structure on solute transport and leaching was developed
178 by Addiscott (1977). The role of soil structure on soil physical processes including water flow and
179 solute transport was conceptualized and framed in a mathematically consistent approach in the early
180 nineties by Gerke and Vangenuchten (1993). A first suite of soil ecosystem dynamics models
181 including detrital food webs was published in the early seventies by Patten (1972) and McBrayer
182 (1977), and in the eighties by Rosswall (1984) and de Ruiter et al. (1993). These studies address the
183 role of soil microbes and soil fauna within the framework of food webs and nutrient dynamics.
184 Recently, soil ecosystem models have been developed that allow modeling of soil biodiversity and its
185 loss, as well as the role of microbes and soil fauna in soil nutrient transfer processes (Hunt and Wall
186 2002).

187 Due to availability of novel measurement and analytical techniques such as x-ray tomography, soil
188 neutron tomography, magnetic resonance imaging but also molecular techniques that enable
189 quantification of molecular-driven soil biological processes and soil microbial composition, data have
190 now become available that allow the development and validation of soil models that are able to
191 quantify physical, chemical and biological processes at the level of the pore scale and below.
192 Combined with an increased understanding of the complex interactions of soil processes, the advent of
193 computers and progress in the development of analytical and improved numerical algorithms,
194 especially at the end of the eighties, have empowered the development of complex soil models
195 integrating physical, chemical and biological processes from the pore scale to the global scale (Parton
196 et al. 1998). Notwithstanding the considerable progress from early modeling efforts, fundamental soil
197 processes and their interactions remain lacking and deficient such that it hampers the prediction and
198 quantification of key soil functions and services. Moreover, the integration and quantification of
199 available knowledge on soil processes remain sketchy due to lack of coherence and limited
200 communication among research communities and disciplines.

201 202 **1.2 The state-of-the-art of modeling soil processes**

203 Advanced soil models nowadays use the Richards equation and the convection-dispersion equation to
204 describe water and solute movement through soils, and often are able to account for preferential flow
205 and transport (Šimůnek et al. 2003). Many of these models include the simulation of heat flow and

206 energy balance approaches providing information on soil temperature dynamics and water vapor flow.
207 Soil chemistry ranges from simple equilibrium or non-equilibrium sorption models, to complex multi-
208 species models, e.g., Jacques et al. (2008). For contaminated soils, the typical single phase flow
209 models have been extended to include multi-phase flow phenomena in order to take into account
210 complex interactions between solid, liquid, gas and contaminant phases. Soil carbon (C) dynamics are
211 typically conceptualized by multi-compartment approaches, where each compartment is composed of
212 organic matter with similar chemical composition or degradability (Coleman et al. 1997; Bricklemeyer
213 et al. 2007). Nitrogen turn-over is strongly related to carbon turn-over and both are often part of an
214 overall model of C, N and nutrient cycling in terrestrial ecosystems (Priesack et al. 2008; Manzoni and
215 Porporato 2009; Batlle-Aguilar et al. 2011). Compared to the above process descriptions, several
216 process descriptions presented below are still in their infancy. At present, many soil models consider
217 the soil to be a rigid medium. Yet, we know that management practices and natural events such as
218 droughts and floods may drastically change soil's architecture and structure. The description of root
219 water uptake is mostly based on simple approaches such as the model of Feddes et al. (1976). Only
220 recently more complex approaches that explicitly describe the 3D soil root system have become
221 available (Hopmans and Bristow 2002; Schroder et al. 2008; Javaux et al. 2013) and are not yet
222 widespread. Improved descriptions of root solute uptake include root hairs, root exudation, and
223 rhizodeposition, which increases microbial activity (Kuzyakov and Domanski 2000), or the role of
224 arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (Schnepf et al. 2008b; Leitner et al. 2010; Schnepf et al. 2012).
225 However, these improved descriptions are not yet sufficiently incorporated into soil-crop models
226 (Hinsinger et al. 2011). There is an overall lack of spatially explicit models that properly describe soil
227 carbon and nutrient dynamics at different spatial scales (Manzoni and Porporato 2009). Approaches to
228 simulating temporal changes of soil structure, a major determinant of water movement, biological
229 activity and root growth and soil erosion, are relatively rare and at an early stage of development (Leij
230 et al. 2002; Stamati et al. 2013). There are few models of interactions between physical and biological
231 processes (Tartakovsky et al. 2009; Laudone et al. 2011). However, the impact of soil biodiversity on
232 soil productivity, crop growth and yield has hardly been included in current soil simulation models.
233 Recent advances in measurement technologies have provided new insights about the role of soil
234 biodiversity on soil and crop processes, generating new knowledge and opening new perspectives for
235 their mathematical description.

236

237 **1.3 The role of soil modeling in quantifying ecosystem services**

238 We capitalize on the framework of ecosystems services to analyze challenges and offer perspectives
239 on soil modeling. Soil plays a prominent role in regulating and provisioning ecosystem services as
240 well as degrading and supporting processes, all linked to societal and population issues and central to
241 scientific underpinning of how the planet functions (Adhikari and Hartemink 2015). We rely on the
242 conceptual framework of Dominati et al. (2010) to frame soil modeling activities related to the

243 description and prediction of soil processes and properties (Figure 1). The Dominati framework offers
244 a holistic view of how soil processes and related ecosystem services are impacted by external drivers
245 (both natural and anthropogenic) and affecting processes and soil natural capital. The various
246 components and sub-components including basic processes, natural capital of soils, and ecosystem
247 services can be harnessed to meet human needs. But these can also be impacted by changes in land
248 use, agricultural practices, technological developments, climate change, and natural hazards. The
249 natural capital of soils is defined as the stocks of mass and energy in the soil and their organization
250 (entropy) (Robinson et al. 2009; Robinson et al. 2014). It is related to the notion of soil properties,
251 some of which are considered inherent and others which can be modified through management. The
252 paper addresses a range of soil modeling activities that attempt to quantify and predict the soil
253 supporting and degradation processes as well as regulating and provisioning services. Supporting
254 processes refer to basic soil processes that enable soils to function and ensure the formation and
255 maintenance of natural capital. These processes include soil formation and soil structure, nutrient
256 cycling and primary production, and soil biological activity, which is closely related to biodiversity
257 and the gene pool. Soil degrading processes diminish the natural capital of soils and include erosion,
258 surface sealing, compaction, salinization, loss of nutrients, acidification, and loss of organic matter and
259 biodiversity.

260 Regulating services provide means to humans to live in a stable, healthy and resilient environment
261 (Dominati et al. 2010). They include climate regulation, water regulation, erosion control, buffering
262 and filtering. Climate regulation is defined as the capacity of the soil to control states and fluxes
263 energy, water and matter that impact climate. Water regulation comprises services of the soil related to
264 storage and retention of quantities of water. It impacts soil hydrological processes such as runoff,
265 leaching and groundwater recharge and water management practices such as irrigation and drainage.
266 Soils have the capacity to store and release chemicals, thereby controlling soil, water, crop and air
267 quality. Provisioning services are related to products derived from ecosystems (e.g., food, wood, fiber,
268 fresh water, physical support, and genetic resources), in all of which soils play a key role. Underlying
269 these processes are basic biological, physical and geochemical processes. Most soil modeling research
270 thus far has been focused on addressing these basic processes independently or coupled with a limited
271 set of basic processes. The goal of this paper to present the key roles of state-of-the-art soil modeling
272 approaches. The key questions addressed here are how soil modeling activities can better serve
273 quantification of soil processes and related ecosystem services, and what areas as well as the key
274 challenges need to be addressed to improve the applicability and usefulness of these current soil
275 models. This paper substantially expands on the review paper by Jury et al. (2011) which mainly
276 focused on the status and challenges in soil physics research dealing with soil physical methods and
277 approaches to characterize soil water properties, scaling and effective hydraulic properties, unstable
278 flow and water repellency, effects of plants on transport processes, characterizing soil microbial
279 diversity and the role of soil ecology in providing ecosystem services.

280

281 In the field of ecosystem services research, mechanistic descriptions of soil functions used to quantify
282 ecosystem services are rarely used. Typical approaches for quantification of ecosystem services
283 comprise the use of one-dimensional proxies based on land use/land cover, non-validated models
284 based on likely combinations of explanatory variables derived from expert knowledge, validated
285 equations that are calibrated on primary and secondary data, representative data collected within the
286 area used to quantify ecosystem services and implicit modeling of the ecosystem service quantity
287 within a monetary value transfer function (Schagner et al. 2013). All these approaches aim at
288 quantifying the supply side of ecosystem services and several models have been developed in this
289 respect such as the polyscale scape model (Jackson et al. 2013), Invest (Nelson et al. 2009), ARIES
290 (Villa et al. 2014) and SolVES (Sherrouse et al. 2011). However, testing and validating the accuracy
291 and precision of these models and approaches are still open issues that need to be addressed (Schagner
292 et al. (2013). Ensemble calculations of ecosystem services using different model approaches including
293 more complex mechanistic models to quantify specific ecosystem functions may be valuable in
294 quantifying uncertainty following approaches similar to the ensemble calculations used in IPCC. The
295 proposed modeling and inter-comparison platform (section 7) may provide an excellent opportunity to
296 perform this kind of analyses. Using more complex models based on a mechanistic representation of
297 soil processes may serve as benchmarks for selecting the simpler models in these ecosystem service
298 models. In addition, highly complex modeling approaches have the potential to be simplified in order to
299 be more easily embedded in such models. One of the main reasons for using simplified models in
300 comparison to more complex models for the assessment and quantification of soil processes is the
301 issue of data availability. Soil science research has however developed several approaches to address
302 this data scarcity issue such as proximal soil sensing, pedotransfer functions and remote sensing of the
303 soil surface. These approaches have not yet been applied in ecosystem services quantification. Also
304 issues of spatial variability of key ecosystem properties, a topic that has been at the core of soil science
305 research, has been identified in ecosystem services research as a topic warranting more attention in
306 order to better assess uncertainty (Schagner et al. 2013). In recent years, the spatial mapping of
307 ecosystem services has gained increasing importance while in combination with GIS methods larger
308 areas can be quantified and spatial patterns of ecosystem services can be better identified (e.g.
309 (Calzolari et al. 2016). In the mapping of ecosystem services, such a GIS framework typically
310 constitutes the core engine of ecosystem service quantification allowing the quantification not only
311 vertically driven and local scale processes but also laterally controlled processes such as overland
312 flow, routing and erosion and sediment transport (e.g., polyscape model). Also here there is a need to
313 assess the quality and accuracy of the predictions and to validate them against real world data.

314 The demand for ecosystem services is mainly determined by socio-economic characteristics and
315 drivers and its quantification or valuation has mainly been addressed by economists. There are several
316 approaches used in ecosystem services research to do this valuation but this is outside the scope of this

317 paper. We refer the reader to the work of Bateman et al. (2013); Schagner et al. (2013); Obst (2015),
318 amongst others. In this paper, we address soil mechanistic models and their application to quantify
319 ecosystem services. Figure 1 illustrates the link between soil processes, soil natural capital and
320 ecosystem services from a soil modeling perspective (adapted after Dominati et al. 2010). Table 1
321 shows in an exemplary manner a number of published studies in which mechanistic soil models have
322 been used to quantify ecosystem services. A community-supported list of soil models can be found in
323 Atikenhead (2016) and at <https://soil-modeling.org/models>.

324

325 Figure 1 HERE

326 Table 1 HERE

328 Both Figure 1 and Table 1 are organized along the ecosystem services provided by soil and the entries
329 in Table 1 refer to the ecosystem services presented in section 2 and 3. Both sections are organized
330 along these entries.

331 **2 Modeling soil supporting and degrading processes**

332 In this section, we will address the state of modeling soil processes with respect to quantifying soil
333 supporting and degrading processes. They directly influence soil structure, architecture and basic soil
334 properties thereby affecting the regulating and provisioning services. As shown in Figure 1, supporting
335 processes include the formation of soil, cycling of water and nutrients, and biological activity.
336 Degrading processes include salinization, erosion and compaction. At the end of the section we
337 present five key challenges to modelling soil supporting and degrading processes (Tab. 2).

338

339 **2.1 Supporting processes**

340 **2.1.1 Soil formation**

341 Soil formation refers to the combination of physical, chemical, biological and anthropogenic
342 processes acting on a soil parent material over periods from years to millennia. Human activities,
343 often related to agricultural practices, strongly contribute to short-term soil formation by causing
344 aggregation, compaction, leaching, clay migration, salinization and changes in the carbon stock.
345 Many specific modeling studies focus on leaching (Dann et al. 2006; Jabro et al. 2006), soil carbon
346 change (Smith et al. 1997), soil acidification (Kros et al. 1999), compaction (Nawaz et al. 2013), or
347 other processes. However, few models treat soil formation as a co-evolution of a large number of soil
348 parameters (Finke and Hutson 2008) in an integrated approach, thus limiting pedogenetic modeling
349 progress (Opolot and Finke 2014).

350 Soil formation is often associated with volumetric changes from strain (Brimhall and Dietrich 1987),
351 because of elastic and inelastic responses to pressure, decalcification, clay transport, and perturbations
352 of different types, including tillage and bioturbation. However, most models assume a constant soil

353 volume, neglecting changes in macroporosity and the dynamic impact of changing water quality on
354 soil hydraulic properties. Thus, most soil models ignore soil structure dynamics and its relevance to
355 the physical isolation of soil components like soil organic carbon by aggregation (Six et al. 2002; Six
356 and Paustian 2014). This may seem insignificant for short-term studies, however, changes in soil
357 structure are key processes at time scales of decades and centuries for which long-term soil formation
358 occurs. For example, short time scale processes of colloid transport are key in pedogenetic clay
359 migration (illuviation) in soil profile development.

360

361 Volume strain also induces soil heterogeneity, as both aggregation and compaction affects
362 macroporosity and may cause high spatial variability in surface and subsurface flow and transport
363 processes, and in turn affect local rates of soil erosion and soil formation. For example, preferential
364 flow may cause persistent leaching pathways at short (leaching hot spots; Koestel et al. 2013), and
365 long timescales (persistent leaching through ripening cracks and albeluvic tongues; Sauer 2009).
366 Research questions remain on development of soil heterogeneity over time, and the possible self-
367 enforcing or self-limiting mechanisms, as well as the relevant spatial scales with appropriate
368 upscaling and downscaling techniques (Bierkens 2000). At pedogenetic timescales, boundary input
369 values are uncertain, meaning that climate, vegetation and historic human activities are highly
370 uncertain as well, and influence the degree to which soil models can be calibrated. The effect of such
371 uncertainties must be determined to allow for accurate scenario-like quantification of ecosystem
372 services under global change.

373

374 **2.1.2 Water cycling**

375 Water cycling in soils involves the infiltration of precipitation in soils and the subsequent release of
376 this water to the atmosphere, and groundwater and surface water systems by evapotranspiration (ET)
377 and leaching, respectively. In order to characterize and predict ecosystem services provided by soils,
378 we must quantify the amount of rainfall, interception, soil infiltration, soil moisture redistribution and
379 root water uptake. Amongst these processes, rainfall is highly variable in space and time, difficult to
380 measure and extremely difficult to predict (Villarini 2009). In addition, climate change will lead to an
381 increase in its spatial-temporal variability and intensity (e.g., strong convective rainfall events)
382 challenging the quantification of infiltration and overland flow processes. For soil moisture
383 redistribution, common soil water flow models employ the Richards equation, which combines the
384 Darcy equation with the continuity equation; including a sink term for soil water extraction by roots
385 (see Eq. 1).

386

$$387 \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{K} \nabla H) - S,$$

Equation 1

388

389 where θ is the volumetric water content ($L^3 L^{-3}$), t is the time (T), \mathbf{K} is the unsaturated soil hydraulic
390 conductivity tensor ($L T^{-1}$), H is the hydraulic head (L), and S is the sink term accounting for root
391 water uptake ($L^3 L^{-3} T^{-1}$). A description of these basic processes and methods to solve this equation
392 were described by Aksoy and Kavvas (2005), Feddes et al. (1988), and some of the frequently used
393 model codes to solve this equation have been described in more detail by e.g., Šimůnek et al. (2003),
394 Simunek and Bradford (2008), and van Dam et al. (2008). Model comparison studies have been
395 conducted by e.g., Bonfante et al. (2010) and Scanlon et al. (2002) but these efforts have been quite
396 rare up to now. For more details on numerical solutions used in these models, we refer readers to
397 section 5.1.

398
399 The spatial and temporal dynamics of soil water flow is usually assumed to be controlled by the soil's
400 unsaturated hydraulic conductivity and hydraulic head gradients; in cultivated top soils, both vary
401 rapidly in space and time. Soils with shallow groundwater levels may show a continuous alternation of
402 percolation and capillary rise (Li et al. 2014). Soil heterogeneity is caused by both soil deposition and
403 formation, as well as by land-use and soil management practices. Pore scale models have been
404 developed to generate the change of soil hydraulic properties due to compaction, shearing and
405 shrinkage (Alaoui et al. 2011). Soil heterogeneity may cause preferential flow through macropores and
406 flow instabilities (Šimůnek et al. 2003), which will reduce soil water residence time and accelerated
407 soil chemical transport. Also hydrophobicity and wettability of soil surfaces may induce preferential
408 flow processes and non-homogeneous movement of water in soils (Dekker and Ritsema 1994)
409 (Ritsema et al. 1993). Despite being more than a century in use, Richards-based models are still not
410 suitable for all soil types (particularly soils with high clay or organic matter contents) and there is still
411 not an adequate physical theory linking all types of flow (Beven and Germann 2013).

412 Soil water and root zone processes are fundamental to the well-being of plants as they control the
413 transport of nutrients and assimilates from photosynthesis, facilitate numerous chemical reactions, and
414 indirectly support the transport of hormones, cell turgor and cooling of leaves by transpiration due to
415 root water uptake (Ehlers and Goss 2003). Soil water flow and vegetation development are therefore
416 closely related. For example, in periods with low leaf area index, rainfall interception and root water
417 uptake are reduced which may enhance runoff. Vice versa, soil moisture and oxygen availability have
418 a large influence on vegetation growth. Existing agro-hydrological models typically focus on the soil's
419 physical processes, and treat transpiration, root water uptake and crop development in a simplified
420 way. In contrast, common crop and agronomic models include detailed carbon dioxide assimilation
421 and plant organ development modules, but lack rigorous description of soil root zone processes. In
422 order to address the close interactions between vegetation and soil, future models must better integrate
423 soil physical knowledge with agronomic and plant physiological knowledge. Main challenges include
424 the simulation of root development and soil water uptake, plant transpiration and vegetation growth in
425 response to heterogeneous soil conditions. Crop root water extraction should account for root density,

426 soil hydraulic functions, root mucilage, soil water status and the suction of roots. Regarding crop
 427 transpiration, coupled crop-soil models should apply Penman-Monteith without the empirical crop
 428 factor (Shuttleworth 2006). Typically, crop coefficients are being used to adapt the predicted reference
 429 evapotranspiration for a well-watered grass cover to the specific crop (Farahani et al. 2007). The
 430 stomatal resistance plays a key role and its control by solar radiation, air temperature, air humidity,
 431 carbon dioxide concentration and leaf water potential. In addition, leaf area index, plant height, albedo
 432 and non-uniform soil moisture distribution need to be accounted for (Kool et al. 2014). A large
 433 number of initiatives to integrate soil water flow and plant growth exist (Romano et al. 2011; van Lier
 434 et al. 2013; Wohling et al. 2013; Gayler et al. 2014). To better address the water cycle at a range of
 435 scales there is a need for more efficient integrated modeling tools, which will be elaborated in section
 436 7. The models described in this section are based on the assumption that the soil is a rigid porous
 437 medium. Soil structural dynamics will be discussed in section 2.2.3 and 3.3.2 and have been addressed
 438 by e.g., Or et al. (2000), and Basu and Kumar (2014).

439

440 **2.1.3 Nutrient cycling**

441 The availability of plant nutrient elements often limits plant productivity in natural and agricultural
 442 ecosystems (Marschner and Marschner 1995). Since primary production is strongly linked to
 443 provisioning services and carbon sequestration and is often inversely related to biodiversity, the
 444 cycling of nutrients is a supporting process that has strong effects on ecosystem services (e.g., section
 445 3.2.1). In natural systems, nutrient inputs from weathering and deposition are generally very limited,
 446 and biomass and soil C stocks are governed by long-term rates of influx and loss. In agriculture and
 447 production forestry, productivity is often boosted by fertilizer and manure additions, but the cycling of
 448 nutrients remains important in determining nutrient use efficiency, the maintenance of nutrient stocks,
 449 and groundwater pollution. Management has major effects on nutrient cycling.

450

451 Nutrient transport in soil is intrinsically linked to water flow (sections 2.1.2, 7.4). Most soils receive a
 452 net throughput of water at least in certain seasons. This is important for preventing salinization, but
 453 means that plant nutrients can easily be leached beyond the rooting zone, particularly during the early
 454 stages of crop growth (Rowe et al. 2001). The main aim of predictive models of nutrient cycling is to
 455 quantify the availability in time and space of nutrient elements in soil, in order to assess likely effects
 456 on plant growth and on nutrient loss fluxes which can affect water and air quality. Quantifying nutrient
 457 availability requires an understanding of the rates with which nutrient elements enter, move within,
 458 and leave the soil and are mineralized from organic materials (Havlin 2013). Transport and leaching of
 459 nutrients and other dissolved substances in soils are typically described by the convection-dispersion
 460 equation (CDE):

461

$$462 \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\theta c + \rho s) = \nabla \cdot (\theta \mathbf{D}_e \nabla c - \mathbf{q} c) - S_r, \quad (\text{Equation 2})$$

463

464 where θ is the soil moisture content ($L^3 L^{-3}$), c is the concentration of a substance in the liquid phase
465 ($M L^{-3}$), s is the concentration of the component in the solid phase, D_e is the effective dispersion tensor
466 ($L^2 T^{-1}$), q is the Darcy flux of water ($L T^{-1}$) which is typically obtained from solving the Richards
467 equation (Equation 1), S_r is the sink term for nutrient uptake by roots [$M L^{-3} T^{-1}$]. For linear equilibrium
468 sorption, the left term of Eq.(2) becomes $\frac{\partial((\theta + \rho K_d)c)}{\partial t}$, where K_d is the distribution coefficient ($L^3 M^{-1}$).

469

470 Nutrient cycling models must take into account the major fluxes of nutrient elements into soil via
471 litter, animal excreta and manures and fertilizers, and already predict nutrient availability fairly well,
472 particularly in response to mineral fertilizers (e.g., Archontoulis et al. 2014). More difficult to predict
473 are microbial-mediated fluxes such as organic nutrient mineralization rates that can be enormously
474 variable. Predictions of mineralization rates of organic materials have frequently been based on their
475 composition in terms of element stoichiometry, on compounds that are relatively labile or recalcitrant,
476 and/or compounds that directly inhibit enzyme activity such as soluble phenolics. Plants also exert
477 strong control on the soil nutrient system, indirectly by determining nutrient and carbon inputs in litter,
478 but also directly by depleting solutes, and by accelerating removal of nutrients from minerals and
479 organic matter mineralization via exudates, exo-enzymes and mycorrhizae. Nutrient cycling models
480 are increasingly taking these effects into account (Taylor et al. 2011).

481 The mineralization and transformation of plant litter and soil organic matter has mainly been modelled
482 using schemas of conceptual pools that turn over at different rates and have been reviewed recently by
483 Manzoni and Porporato (2009) and Falloon and Smith (2010). For example, the Roth-C model
484 (Coleman et al. 1997), splits litter into “resistant” and “decomposable” material, and soil organic
485 matter into “microbial”, “humified” and “inert” material, and tracks transfers among these pools using
486 first-order rate coefficients. The values of these coefficients are modified according to temperature,
487 moisture and soil cover. Similar schemas are used in CENTURY (Parton et al. 1988), DAISY (Hansen
488 et al. 1991), and ECOSSE (Smith et al. 2010), among other models. Several challenges exist with this
489 approach. Most turnover is of recent material, but the bulk of the organic matter in soil is relatively
490 old. Understanding how nutrients will be incorporated into and released from this large stock depends
491 on quantifying transfers into more inert pools, which are relatively small and difficult to observe.
492 Given several organic matter pools and unconstrained rate coefficients it is possible to reproduce a
493 very wide range of decomposition trajectories, which limits the predictive ability of these models.
494 Predictions of nutrient cycling rates are likely to be improved by constraining models using actual
495 measurements of element stocks and fluxes. The average age of soil organic carbon obtained through
496 ^{14}C dating is a particularly useful measurement, and is used in models such as N14C (Tipping et al.
497 2012) (Figure 3) to reduce the number of unconstrained parameters. An additional way forward in flux
498 quantification is stable isotope tracking (section 6.4).

499

500

501 Figure 2 HERE

502

503 As well as providing nutrient inputs in litter, plants influence nutrient cycling by removing nutrient
504 elements from the soil solution as they become available either in mineral form or as small organic
505 molecules (Chapin et al. 1993). The efficiency of this process means that observed nutrient
506 concentrations in soil solution are often close to zero during active plant growth. A major challenge in
507 modeling nutrient availability is therefore determining the most appropriate measurement with which
508 to compare model predictions (Schimel and Bennett 2004). Time-integrated measurements such as net
509 mineralization (Rowe et al. 2011) or sorption onto resins (Qian and Schoenau 2002) are generally
510 preferable. The prediction of nutrient availability in terms of a metric that is measurable remains a key
511 goal for soil nutrient modeling.

512

513 Considerable progress has been made to resolve rhizospheric processes (see Section 3.2.1), yet
514 mechanistic modeling of the direct effects of plants on nutrient release from organic matter and
515 weatherable minerals through root exudation and enzyme production are currently limited to a few
516 models of nutrient cycling at the ecosystem scale. Organic acids exuded by roots or microbes can
517 increase nutrient solubility via effects on the pH of microsites, and/or provide a source of labile C
518 which allows bacteria and fungi to mineralize more recalcitrant substrates. Accounting for root
519 exudates is important as comparatively small exudate fluxes can have a disproportionate effect in
520 increasing nutrient availability (Yin et al. 2014). Roots and mycorrhizae also produce enzymes that
521 directly solubilize nutrients. Production of such enzymes may be limited by nitrogen availability,
522 sometimes leading to counter-intuitive responses such as increasing plant tissue P content with
523 increasing N inputs (Rowe et al. 2008).

524

525 Many studies of nutrient cycling have addressed only a single element, most commonly N. Nitrogen is
526 the nutrient element required in largest quantities, but the cycling of N into and out of plants can be
527 controlled by other elements. Productivity in natural systems may ultimately be limited by the
528 availability of elements essential for nitrogen fixation such as phosphorus or molybdenum (van
529 Groenigen et al. 2006), and terrestrial ecosystems often develop towards a multiply co-limited state
530 (Harpole et al. 2011). Processes governing availability of nutrient elements, including micronutrients,
531 were well summarized by Marschner and Marschner (1995). Few ecosystem-scale models take into
532 account micronutrients, but phosphorus has increasingly been included in such models, particularly
533 those addressing soil formation over multi-century or longer timescales (Taylor et al. 2011). As well
534 as predicting the availability of individual elements, it is important to consider how interactions among
535 nutrient availabilities can determine plant production. The concept that nutrients are used more
536 efficiently when other nutrients are in greater supply has been implemented in models such as

537 QUEFTS (Janssen et al. 1990). The most appropriate approach to modeling nutrient interactions may
538 vary with the ecosystem and with data availability – a law-of-the-minimum approach (Liebig 1840)
539 may be adequate for agricultural systems, whereas concurrent limitation may be a more appropriate
540 concept for more natural systems (Rastetter 2011).

541 Examples of biogeochemical models at the larger scale are listed in Table 1 and are also discussed in
542 section 7.4. In summary, the aspects of modeling nutrient cycling that currently offer the most scope
543 for improvement are: interactions between litter composition and intrinsic soil properties in
544 determining mineralization rates; links between rapid turnover of organic matter and the slower
545 processes that determine soil development; links between nutrient availability and transport models; a
546 focus on modeling aspects of nutrient availability that can be measured; direct effects of plants and
547 mycorrhizae on mineralization; and interactions among nutrient elements.

548

549 **2.1.4 Biological activity**

550 Soils are home to 25% of all living species on Earth (Turbé et al. 2010) and contain a vast amount of
551 genetic diversity mainly derived from microbes but also plant roots (Torsvik et al. 1990; Torsvik and
552 Ovreas 2002). Soil biological activity derived from genetic diversity is a critical supporting ecosystem
553 service because of the diverse metabolic pathways encoded in microbial DNA (Daniel 2004; Ferrer et
554 al. 2009; Chan et al. 2013). These pathways include antibiotic production and resistance as well as
555 other medically- and industrially-relevant natural products (Handelsman et al. 1998). In both managed
556 and unmanaged systems, soil biological activity and genetic diversity supports emergent ecosystem
557 services including soil nutrient cycling, plant productivity, soil formation, and carbon storage (van der
558 Heijden et al. 2008; Singh et al. 2010).

559

560 Despite the importance of soil biological activity, we currently lack adequate tools to predict rates of
561 biological processes in specific soil environments or link genetic diversity to soil ecosystem
562 functioning. Many empirical studies have begun to make this link (Hawkes et al. 2005; Prosser and
563 Nicol 2008; Mackelprang et al. 2011), the large number of interacting biological and physical
564 processes poses a key challenge for modeling soil biological activity (Blagodatsky and Smith 2012).
565 Even at very small scales, many thousands to millions of distinct genotypes (or operational taxonomic
566 units - OTU) may inhabit one gram of soil (Torsvik et al. 1990; Curtis et al. 2002; Schloss and
567 Handelsman 2006; Or et al. 2007). Genetic diversity interacts with environmental heterogeneity in
568 physical and chemical properties and states (Dion 2008). Heterogeneity occurs both in time and in
569 space, thereby driving changes in community structure and activity of soil organisms (Torsvik et al.
570 1996; Curtis and Sloan 2005; Prosser et al. 2007). For example, soil hydration status and pore-space
571 characteristics influence microbial motility, an important trait for expansion and survival in highly
572 patchy soil environments (Barton and Ford 1997; Chang and Halverson 2003; Or et al. 2007;

573 Dechesne et al. 2010), especially in unsaturated soils with limited advective transport (Ebrahimi and
574 Or 2014).

575 Progress in resolving soil ecological questions requires quantitative models that integrate key
576 biophysical processes with ecological interactions at appropriate spatial and temporal scales (Prosser
577 et al. 2007). Still, such models are not yet well developed (Todd-Brown et al. 2012). Most current
578 models of soil functioning are based on correlations between biological activity and ecosystem
579 functions. At the landscape (Attard et al. 2011; Eisenhauer et al. 2012) to soil pore scale (Hallett et al.
580 2013), correlations between broad measurements of biodiversity or biological activity (e.g., guilds,
581 phyla, functional groups, nutrient cycling) and soil properties (e.g., nutrients, pH, texture, pore
582 structure) are used to parameterize soil models (Hunt and Wall 2002; Young and Crawford 2004;
583 Cazelles et al. 2013). Some of these models describe the trophic relationships between organisms,
584 including plants (Hunt and Wall 2002). These food web models have suggested that the relationship
585 between biodiversity and ecosystem processes is affected by land use (de Vries et al. 2013).

586
587 A new generation of models is accounting for diversity in soil organismal traits at appropriate spatial
588 and temporal scales (Long and Or 2009; Allison 2012; Crawford et al. 2012). Organisms with
589 favorable combinations of traits in a given environment will proliferate and contribute to ecological
590 functioning or to the formation of “hot spots” such as within soil aggregates (Ebrahimi and Or 2015).
591 There are several advantages to these trait-based approaches. First, they do not require information
592 about specific organisms. Instead, genetic or other trait information can be derived from a range of
593 sources and used to establish trait distributions for modeling. Trait values can be assigned to
594 hypothetical organisms from these distributions at random to represent a wide range of potential
595 ecological strategies. The environmental conditions then determine which strategies are actually
596 viable. Second, the traits and their interrelationships can be derived from existing genomic and
597 metagenomics data. These datasets include rich information on functional gene frequencies and
598 correlations (Berlemont and Martiny 2013). Finally, trait-based models can be run in different
599 physiochemical contexts to mimic soil heterogeneity and make predictions of ecosystem services,
600 such as the total amount of carbon storage or rates of nutrient cycling (section 2.1.3). Trait-based
601 models have been applied to predict enzyme activities, decomposition rates, and nitrogen cycling in
602 decomposing litter (Allison 2012; Kaiser et al. 2014) as well as the warming response of carbon use
603 efficiency in soils (Allison 2014).

604 In soil systems, significant progress can be made by implementing organismal traits in spatially-
605 explicit, individual-based models (Wang and Or 2014). The question of what part of genetic diversity
606 estimates is directly linked and shaped by present ecological conditions, and what fraction is shaped
607 by population and interspecies interactions over time remains a central challenge for modern
608 microbial ecology (Curtis and Sloan 2005; Martiny et al. 2006; Prosser et al. 2007). Integrating these
609 poorly understood processes into soil models presents an even greater challenge.

610

611 2.2 Soil degrading processes

612 2.2.1 Salinization and alkalization

613 Salinization of soil and water resources is a chronic problem in many arid regions where
614 evapotranspiration exceeds rainfall. The expansion of irrigated agriculture with marginal water
615 sources to meet the growing demand for food is likely to increase the range of soils impacted by
616 salinity. A confluence of conditions ranging from the projected hotter and drier climate patterns, to
617 increasing salt loads due to use of marginal water sources, salt water intrusion due to over exploitation
618 of coastal aquifers; rapid withdrawal of slowly replenishing inland aquifers (e.g., Ogallala aquifer in
619 the US), and mismanagement of rapidly expanding irrigation in arid regions are expected to confound
620 this long standing problem (Assouline et al. 2015). Land degradation and loss of agricultural
621 productivity due to salinity and sodicity hazards are among the earliest man-made ecological disasters
622 responsible for the demise of the civilizations of Mesopotamia and the Indus valley (Hillel 1992; Van
623 Schilfgaarde 1994; Ghassemi et al. 1995). Additionally, in some regions the build-up of calcium
624 carbonate modifies soil hydraulic properties through the formation of low permeability carbonate
625 enriched soil layers. Presently, about 20% to 50% of the irrigated land worldwide is salt-affected
626 (Ghassemi et al. 1995; Flowers 1999; Pitman and Lauchli 2002; Tanji 2002). Salinity damage in
627 agriculture is estimated at US \$12 billion per year, and it is expected to increase with persistent
628 salinization of water resources (Ghassemi et al. 1995). Crop response to the spatial and the temporal
629 distributions of soil water content and soil salinity is complex and not fully understood, whereas it is
630 often the combined effects of the osmotic and capillary components of the soil solution that affects
631 plant transpiration and crop yield (Childs and Hanks 1975; Bresler and Hoffman 1986; Bras and Seo
632 1987; Bresler 1987; van Genuchten 1987; Hanson et al. 2008; Russo et al. 2009; Duffner et al. 2014).
633 Salinization has been extensively modelled based on numerical models of water and solute dynamics
634 in agroecosystems, e.g., based on the SWMS and HYDRUS codes (Tuli and Jury 2003; Mguidiche et
635 al. 2015). However, one of the most urgent modeling challenges is to improve quantitative description
636 of the interactions between soil water salinity and plant response. Much of the know how in the basis
637 of salinity management (leaching, crop selection, water quality mixing) is empirically based and
638 derived from seasonal averages making it difficult to generalize and adapt to changing climate and
639 future water quality and more intensive agriculture (Assouline et al. 2015).

640 The standard salinity management strategies often involve mixing of waters of different qualities, the
641 selection of salt-tolerant crops, avoidance of overly sensitive soils, and is compensating for high
642 salinity water by increasing irrigation dosage above plant transpiration demand (Russo and Bakker
643 1987; Shani and Dudley 2001; Shani et al. 2007; Dudley et al. 2008; Russo et al. 2009). The
644 traditional approach where the leaching fraction increases with irrigation water salinity, introduces
645 significant risks due to increasing salt loads on groundwater resources that could reduce available
646 freshwater at the regional scale (Assouline and Shavit 2004; Schoups et al. 2005; Shani et al. 2005).

647 Proper assessment of such environmental risks, and the sustainability of irrigated agriculture in such
648 systems hinges on the ability to model and predict multi season and regional hydrologic processes
649 well beyond the single field – single season irrigation decisions of the past.

650 A rapidly expanding alternative source for water irrigation in arid and semi-arid regions is the
651 application of treated effluents (TE) (Hamilton et al. 2007; Qadir et al. 2007; Pedrero et al. 2010),
652 especially in agricultural regions near urban areas (Shuval et al. 1986). Global estimates of effluent
653 reuse indicate that about 20 million hectares of agricultural land are irrigated with TE (Jimenez and
654 Asano 2008). However, the increased reliance on TE for irrigation in arid regions is often practiced
655 with little consideration of long-term impact on soil, hydrology and ecology of the irrigated area. The
656 primary risks associated with TE irrigation involve high concentrations of salts, especially sodium,
657 and of organic compounds (Feigin et al. 1991; Balks et al. 1998; Hamilton et al. 2007; Pedrero et al.
658 2010). Recent studies have shown that long term effects of TE irrigation resulted in a significant
659 degradation of soil structure and hydraulic properties due to increased exchangeable sodium
660 percentage (Leij et al. 2004; Lado et al. 2005; Assouline and Narkis 2011; Levy 2011; Assouline and
661 Narkis 2013). Evidence from other studies have shown other negative effects related to chemical
662 aspects (Xiong et al. 2001; Wallach et al. 2005; Lado et al. 2012), and human health and other
663 ecological risks associated with introduction of pathogenic microorganisms, heavy metals, and toxic
664 organic compounds into the soil and crop (Toze 2006; Pedrero et al. 2010; Scheierling et al. 2010; del
665 Mar Alguacil et al. 2012). Hence, the sustainability of a coupled agro-urban hydrological cycle where
666 TE is used for irrigation hinges on proper management to mitigate adverse impacts of long-term TE
667 application to avoid potential collapse of soil ecological functions.

668 Soil salinity management is likely to remain a challenge in the foreseeable future, especially with the
669 growing pressure of agricultural intensification, (to feed the growing world population), changes in
670 climate patterns, and increased reliance on marginal water sources. Meeting these challenges will
671 require multidisciplinary approaches that combine modeling tools with management strategies to
672 ensure sustainable and safe use of irrigation water resources of variable quality. We clearly need a new
673 generation of quantitative models that integrate key biophysical processes with ecological interactions
674 at appropriate spatial and temporal scales.

675 **2.2.2 Erosion**

676 Erosion can result from the action of wind, water and tillage. In semi-arid zones, wind erosion is very
677 significant and tillage erosion redistributes considerable amounts of soil at the field scale. However,
678 water erosion is globally the most important and will be the focus of discussion here.

679 The intensification of agriculture and changes in rainfall patterns with more intense rain events may
680 increase rates of surface soil erosion. The damage is not limited to the removal of productive soil top
681 layer (Pimental and Sparks 2000), but also affects surface water quality downstream (stream and lake
682 ecology, dam siltation and enhanced pollution by agrochemicals and colloid facilitated transport). Soil
683 erosion is strongly connected with drivers for climate change, as the mobilization of large amounts of

684 soil organic carbon by soil transport may significantly contribute to atmospheric CO₂ emissions
685 (WMO 2005). In addition, drier soil conditions associated with future climate extremes may limit
686 rates of soil carbon accumulation, thereby reducing soil aggregation and enhancing vulnerability to
687 wind erosion. A host of soil conservation strategies for combating land degradation due to soil erosion
688 offer additional benefits such as enhanced soil water storage (Troeh 1992; Pimental and Sparks 2000).
689 Soil erosion leads to significant loss of agricultural land and reduction in agricultural productivity, as
690 soil loss diminishes soil water storage capacity, impacting crop growth and enhancing flood risk.
691 Furthermore, soil erosion plays a significant role in the biogeochemical cycles of C, N, P and Si as it
692 redistributes significant amounts of these elements over the surface of the earth (Van Oost et al. 2007;
693 Quinton et al. 2010), see also section 2.1.3 on nutrient cycling. Several reviews on modeling soil
694 erosion have been published in the past and the reader is referred to those papers for more information
695 on the different concepts ranging from simple models such as the Universal Soil Loss Equation
696 (USLE), to more complex process-based models such as KINEROS (KINematic EROsion
697 Simulation) and WEPP (Water Erosion Prediction Project) (Merritt et al. 2003; Aksoy and Kavvas
698 2005).

699 Soil erosion by water is a complex phenomenon resulting from soil detachment by raindrop impacts
700 and overland flow, and transport of particles by rain splash and by sheet and channel flow (Ellison
701 1944; Ellison 1945). Quantitative evaluation of erosion effects at the different scales require modeling
702 capabilities in order to deal with the complexity of the processes involved. In the different modeling
703 approaches, the driving and resisting forces are conceptually expressed by (1) flow erosivity (an
704 indicator of the erosive potential of rainfall and runoff) and (2) soil erodibility (a measure of the
705 susceptibility of soil particles to detachment and transport by rainfall and runoff). Both are state
706 variables that respond to variations in local and regional conditions, making their evaluation the real
707 challenge of erosion modeling. The flow erosivity requires data on the timing and amount of runoff
708 (Assouline et al. 2007). This is required for the non-trivial issue of modelling coupled infiltration and
709 overland flow (Furman 2008; Chen 2012; Langhans et al. 2013). Quantitative representation of the
710 infiltration process itself requires multi-scale information of soil hydraulic properties and its spatial
711 variations, soil surface conditions, topography, soil profile initial conditions, and boundary conditions
712 (Assouline 2013). The amount of sediment detached or transported either by drop impact of flowing
713 water will be determined by the soil "erodibility," which is controlled by a range of both static and
714 dynamic soil properties, including soil texture and soil mechanical properties (Wischmeier 1978;
715 Watson and Laflen 1986; Poesen and Nearing 1993; Bradford and Foster 1996; Römkens et al. 2001;
716 Assouline and Ben-Hur 2006)

717

718 Because of the multi-scale nature of erosion, one can either focus on the micro-scale and consider
719 soil particle detachment by rain splash and sediment transport using a process-based approach
720 (Eckern 1950; Rose 1960; Lane 1982; Diaz et al. 2008) or use an empirical macro-scale approach

721 (Pelletier 2012). At the macro-scale, the most commonly used quantitative expression of soil erosion
722 continues to be the multiplication-of-factors type empirical equation, as proposed by (Neal 1938) and
723 where soil loss is a function of the product of soil erodibility and rain erosivity (Wischmeier 1978;
724 Meyer and Harmon 1989; Kinnell and Wood 1992; Kinnell 1993; Zhang et al. 1998). Following this
725 approach, soil erodibility is considered an intrinsic soil property independent of rainfall and slope
726 conditions (Lane 1987). However, soil erodibility has been found to be dependent on infiltration and
727 runoff (Nearing et al. 1990; Kinnell 1993), and to change with time during the rainfall event (West
728 1988; Assouline and Ben-Hur 2006). Soil erodibility also varies over the long term due to feedbacks
729 between erosion and soil properties (Govers et al. 2006). Another major problem with current macro-
730 scale assessments is that the procedures used for upscaling are sometimes inadequate which may lead
731 to a significant overestimation of erosion rates (Cerdan et al. 2010; Quinton et al. 2010).

732
733 Relatively little attention has been given to the modeling of soil transport across the landscape, in
734 connection with soil, nutrient, and carbon delivery to stream and open waters. Whereas spatially-
735 distributed sediment routing using transport and deposition laws may offer better perspectives to
736 understand sediment delivery, such modeling approaches have been relatively simple (Van Rompaey
737 et al. 2001) and need further improvement to fully account for the complexity of real landscapes.
738 Mitigating and controlling erosion require advance modeling tools to evaluate the appropriateness and
739 efficiency of alternative approaches and methods.

740

741 **2.2.3 Compaction**

742 Soil compaction caused by human activities that reduces soil pore volume has been recognized as a
743 worldwide problem (Bridges 1992; Soane and van Ouwerkerk 1995). Compaction affects soil fertility
744 by reducing water and airflow, which alters the soil's biological activity and redox potential, induces
745 changes in iron mobilization and CH₄ emission. These changes can turn soil into a source for
746 environmental CH₄ instead of a sink. Furthermore, the platy structure caused by soil compaction
747 reduces plant rootability. Compaction also decreases water infiltration, which increases water runoff,
748 soil erosion, and the likelihood of flooding and debris flow. Efficient protection against unwanted soil
749 compaction requires knowledge of the mechanical processes and properties of structured, unsaturated
750 soils. Although compaction occurs naturally during soil formation (section 2.1.1), the majority of soil
751 compaction studies assess the anthropogenic impacts that cause compaction, such as tillage, vehicle
752 and animal traffic, or forest clear-cutting with heavy harvesting equipment. All soil deformation
753 processes affect ecosystem services and soil functions in the short term and some, e.g., involving
754 irreversible dewatering and compaction of clay, in the long term as well.

755 Soil compaction models use both empirical (simple cause-effect relationships), semi-empirical
756 (pedotransfer functions), and process-based approaches (Keller et al. 2013). Process-based compaction
757 modeling is generally a three-step approach. The first step describes the load situation (e.g., pressure

758 distribution at the soil surface under the wheel or track of a vehicle). The second step quantifies the
759 change in the stress field within the soil due to the load applied to the soil surface. The third step uses
760 constitutive relationships to quantify soil deformation as a result of the change in the soil stress field.
761 These three steps are typically incorporated into an analytical (Soehne 1953; Soehne 1958; Horn 2003;
762 Van den Akker 2004; Keller et al. 2007), or numerical models (Richards et al. 1997; Berli et al. 2003;
763 Peth et al. 2006).

764
765 Recently, progress was made toward improving the characterization of the pressure distribution at the
766 soil surface (Gysi et al. 2001; Keller 2005; Lamandé et al. 2007), evaluating the different stress
767 transfer models within the soil (Défossez et al. 2014), and determining soil constitutive relationships
768 (Horn 2003; Keller and Arvidsson 2007; Berli 2015). This progress allowed for improved process-
769 based compaction modeling that used a comprehensive framework to describe stress-deformation
770 behavior due to vehicle traffic. Although most compaction research is being done at the bulk
771 (centimeter) scale, recent advances in nondestructive imaging (microcomputed tomography, μ CT;
772 neutron tomography; and nuclear magnetic imaging, MRI) and numerical modeling with high-
773 performance computing have allowed for compaction research at the pore scale (Berli et al. 2006;
774 Eggers et al. 2006; Berli et al. 2008; Peth et al. 2010). Additionally, more soil information has become
775 available because of georeferencing and global positioning systems (GPSs) that allows for soil
776 compaction modeling at the field scale using pedotransfer functions. Horn and Fleige (2003)
777 developed pedotransfer functions to estimate compaction sensitivity based on bulk density texture,
778 organic matter content and soil structure as well as moisture status. Horn and Fleige (2003) also
779 addressed the changes in physical soil functions that were related to soil surface loads, e.g., due to
780 vehicle traffic (Duttmann et al. (2014). Assouline (2006a); Assouline (2006b) extended models for the
781 soil water retention and hydraulic conductivity curves to account for structural changes in soils
782 resulting from changes in porosity, enabling the prediction of the hydraulic properties of compacted or
783 tilled soils.

784
785
786 Despite the considerable progress in soil compaction modeling since Soehne's early work (Soehne
787 1953; Soehne 1958), challenges remain. For example, we have only a very limited quantitative
788 understanding of soil structure and dynamics and how they influence the physical and mechanical
789 processes and properties of soil (Logsdon et al. 2013). Although the description of soil stress-
790 deformation behavior has largely improved, the impact of soil deformation on soil hydrological
791 processes, soil chemistry, and soil biology is still not well understood. Another limitation is that
792 classical soil mechanics were developed for mostly static loads, whereas most soil compaction is
793 caused by dynamic loads, such as soil deformation under a rolling wheel. The differences between
794 compaction caused by static and dynamic loads were studied only recently (Wiermann et al. 1999;

795 Ghezzehei and Or 2001). Finally, there is a huge gap in upscaling soil compaction properties and
796 processes measured in the laboratory to the field scale, as well as understanding the effects of field-
797 scale compaction on hydrological and ecological processes in the landscape. For an ecosystem-scale
798 soil model, we suggest that a simplified semi-empirical soil compaction modeling approach would
799 likely be the most effective to improve the quantification of soil ecosystem processes and identify the
800 key challenges.

801

802

803 TABLE 2 HERE

804

805

806 **3 Soil modeling and ecosystem services**

807 In this section we will deal with the role of soil models in understanding, quantifying and delivering
808 ecosystem services. We focus on two groups of ecosystem services as outlined in Fig. 1, i.e.,
809 regulating and provisioning services. Regulating services include climate regulation and recycling of
810 wastes and buffering and filtering capacity of soils; provisioning services include biomass production
811 for food, fiber and energy, soil as habitat and physical support. We discuss the role of soil models to
812 determine the importance of the different soil properties, as affected by the different soil processes,
813 for the different ecosystem services. At the end of this section, we formulate five key challenges on
814 soil modelling and ecosystem services (Tab. 3).

815

816 **3.1 Regulating services**

817 **3.1.1 Climate regulation**

818 Climate regulation may be assessed in terms of the time scales of its regulatory function. For
819 example, at hydrological short time scales soil water storage affects various climate patterns (e.g.,
820 rainfall events, droughts, heat waves) (IPCC 2007), whereas for the longer term, soil serves as a sink
821 or source of greenhouse gases (GHG) through levels of carbon sequestration (Smith et al. 2013). Soil
822 regulatory function could also be assessed through mechanistic feedbacks related to its properties and
823 hydro-ecological functioning, such as effects of soil on plant communities that affect climate, surface
824 albedo, land use patterns and more. The inextricable links between soil and climate have been
825 highlighted in the section on soil formation (section 2.1.1), and have been quantified in various
826 quantitative models for soil formation. For purposes of this review, feedbacks from soil processes that
827 modify climate processes constitute soil's primary regulatory role. Soil water storage features
828 prominently in the definition of droughts (Alley 1984; Dai et al. 2004) and is considered an important
829 factor in observed extreme heat waves (Jaeger and Seneviratne 2011; Seneviratne et al. 2014). A

830 recent study (Trenberth et al. 2015) has argued that the omission of soil processes (water content) in
831 climate models seriously hampers their ability to explain the origins of a range of climate extremes
832 ranging from droughts, to floods and heatwaves.

833 Soil properties control soil evaporation dynamics and transition to stage 2 evaporation (Or et al. 2013)
834 a short term process with significant surface energy balance ramifications. On decadal to millennial
835 time scales, the most important aspect of soil climate regulation is the soil's role as a source or sink of
836 carbon and other GHG (Smith et al. 2013). This is linked to the amount and stability of estimated soil
837 carbon stocks that vary with soil properties and function (also with land use and climate). Changes in
838 soil surface temperature affect the fate of carbon stocks in arctic regions and within a relatively short
839 period, large tracts of land may become significant sources of GHG at high rates, for example, due to
840 the rapid thawing of permafrost soils in northern latitudes (Schuur et al. 2015). On geologic time
841 scales, rock weathering and formation of soils play a substantial role supporting vegetation,
842 accumulating carbon and thus regulation of planetary climate (e.g. Pagani et al. 2009; Maher and
843 Chamberlain 2014)

844 Soil management practices such as tillage and land clearing (forests and grasslands) are among the
845 main human activities that have significantly increased CO₂ emissions in the past centuries with much
846 of the emissions mediated by soil microbial processes. Additionally, the increase in fertilizer
847 application to boost crop production (part of the "green revolution"), has resulted in significant
848 releases of nitrous oxides to the atmosphere thereby reducing nutrient use efficiency and directly
849 contributing to global warming. Vinken et al. (2014) have estimated that ¼ of soil NO_x emissions
850 come directly from applied fertilizers. For natural systems at the Northern lower latitudes, it is
851 expected that soil warming and melting of permafrost will result in positive feedbacks, of unknown
852 magnitudes (Schuur et al. 2015). In general, wide ranging estimates of negative feedbacks are
853 projected with rising temperatures that could decrease net primary production. Hence, to understand
854 the role of GHG emissions and to mitigate their adverse impacts, the soil community must endeavor
855 to study the integrated soil system by linking physical, chemical and biological processes, their
856 variations with future climate patterns, and introduce state-of-the-art knowledge on soil processes in
857 existing and operational terrestrial biosphere models (Fisher et al. 2014). Especially, the assessment
858 of the impact of management and land use practices on GHG emissions requires models that are
859 based on a fundamental understanding of these processes. There are however substantial deficits in
860 presently used models both in terms of appropriate parameterization and with respect to the underling
861 processes (see also section 2.1.3 and 2.1.4). When considering regional soil carbon balances, one
862 must take account of changes caused by soil erosion and soil formation (longer time scales) that
863 affecting the soil organic matter pool and the balance between its decomposition and sequestration
864 (Lal 2014; Amundson et al. 2015).

865 Soil models for climate regulation are listed in Table 1. Advanced soil modeling platforms offer a
866 way forward that systematically use available knowledge, and considers and incorporates feedbacks

867 (climate, soil biology, social aspects) to yield better understanding and predictive capabilities of
868 integrated soil systems (See section 7). Integrated modeling approaches informed by climate
869 scenarios and feedback provide the necessary know-how for adapting agricultural and natural
870 ecosystems to changing temperatures and soil moisture regimes that affect plants and crop yields as
871 well as soil ecological functioning and long term sustainability. These aspects are further discussed in
872 sections 7.4 and 7.5.

873

874 **3.1.2 Buffering and filtering**

875 We may define the buffering capacity of soil as including processes that involve storage and
876 transformation of chemicals, including both anthropogenic and bio-geogenic substances. Soil
877 buffering is crucial with regard to the filtering capacity of soil, i.e., the soil's capacity to temporarily
878 retain chemicals from emission to the atmosphere or groundwater. Addition and removal of chemicals
879 disturbs the state of a soil, affecting biota as they require sufficiently stable conditions, however, such
880 disturbances can be countered by biogeochemical processes. The modeling goal is to quantify the
881 extent and spatiotemporal variability of such buffering.

882

883 All soil-related processes are connected with soil buffering and filtering. Relevant physical processes
884 concern the exchange of carrier fluids such as water and gas with groundwater, surface water, and
885 atmosphere, as well as by physical filtration at phase interfaces, whereas important biogeochemical
886 processes are chemical ad/desorption, precipitation/dissolution, and transformation. In addition,
887 biological processes, like in the rhizosphere and biofilms may play an important role in filtering and
888 buffering and have not been explicitly considered in modeling until recently (Or et al. 2007; Schimel
889 and Schaeffer 2012). Soil clay minerals, Fe/Al/Mn-hydroxides, organic matter, and carbonates play a
890 major role in soil's buffering and filtering capacity. Because soil organic matter is a major sorbent for
891 many important chemicals, buffering is intensively linked with the major cycling of N, P, and C.
892 Major inputs of e.g. nitrogen to the soil system may affect the soil's pH leading to acidification and
893 changes in its buffering capacity (Guo et al. 2010; Tian and Niu 2015). Connected with the
894 unsaturated soil zone is the capillary fringe at the groundwater table. Since the capillary fringe is
895 characterized by steep gradients in terms of hydraulic state variables, chemical (e.g., redox potential)
896 and biological conditions, it involves both different processes and different rates of interactions with
897 regard to buffering and filtering than the vadose zone. Moreover, this biogeochemically important
898 transition zone changes very dynamically with time and depth (Winter et al. 2015). Yet our
899 understanding of this important zone between the vadose zone and the groundwater is still limited
900 requiring more intensive research and an more improved incorporation of capillary fringe processes in
901 soil models.

902

903

904 Significant advances have been made during the past decades in understanding, quantifying, and
905 modeling of buffering and filtering processes. General mineral equilibria models have been extended
906 with validated ad/desorption models for specific groups of solutes such as metals (Zhang et al. 2012;
907 Duffner et al. 2014). Interaction between soil components is crucial for quantifying buffering and
908 filtering; inorganic and organic components might compete either for sorption sites or for forming
909 aqueous complexes increasing solubility or decreasing sorption. A number of numerical tools have
910 been developed during the last decade accounting for these interactions, mainly based on principles of
911 thermodynamic equilibrium (Steeffel et al. 2014). The generic nature of these tools allows for
912 implementing complex conceptual models for fate and transport (Jacques et al. 2008; Leterme et al.
913 2014; Thaysen et al. 2014) but these models generally lack kinetics as well as the inclusion of
914 physical non-equilibrium conditions. This includes non-equilibrium of water/air dynamics, as these
915 interfaces control interactions and access to sorption sites, duration of interactions and LEA validity,
916 and biological activity. Much of that dynamics is caused by soil heterogeneity, such as preferential
917 and bypass flow. Many advances have been made in modeling soil heterogeneity both explicitly by
918 Bellin et al. (1993); Roth (1995), as well as implicitly by Beven and Germann (2013).

919 Linking inorganic and organic biogeochemistry seems crucial for understanding the fate of many
920 solutes. For example some heavy metals form strong complexes with dissolved organic matter as
921 described in Figure 4 for mercury (Leterme et al. 2014). Whereas modeling of inorganic chemical
922 biogeochemistry often addresses specific components (e.g., heavy metals) and equilibrium
923 relationships, models for biogeochemical N, P, K, and carbon typically emphasize conversion rates
924 such as for organic matter and nitrogen mineralization. For cases where the organic matter pool may
925 change significantly, with increasing occurrences of drought or water logging with associated redox
926 potential changes, links between organic and inorganic interactions must be investigated. The kinetics
927 of abiotic soil chemical changes also requires attention (Werner Stumm 1995; Schroder et al. 2008).
928 In addition to the kinetic behavior of soil chemical processes, soil biological processes show similar
929 rate limited behavior which is most likely controlled by chemical and structural soil properties. In
930 fact, whether certain biological processes (as denitrification) occur at all, depends on the presence of
931 the necessary microbial populations. In addition, bioavailability of contaminants for micro-organisms
932 affects the leaching behavior in essence (Beltman et al. 2008).

933 As soil models might be applied on long time scales for persistent contaminant, buffering and filtering
934 cannot be independent from soil formation structural dynamics (see section 2.1.1) as these determine
935 flow paths and availability of reactive sites. In summary, integrating physical aspects of non-uniform
936 flow and solute transport with chemical and biological processes, will remain a prominent focus of
937 soil-modeling research.

938

939 Figure 3 HERE

940

941 **3.1.3 Recycling of anthropogenic waste**

942 Many human activities produce waste often released to the soil, such as chemotoxic and radioactive
943 elements, toxic organic compounds and potentially harmful living organisms and viruses. Waste
944 inputs range from feedlots dung and farm animals, irrigation by wastewater non-point pollution by
945 atmospheric deposition, accidental spills, to deliberate dumping of industrial by-products in highly-
946 engineered waste landfills. A specific pathway are soil amendments to reduce metal leaching or to
947 control CO₂ sequestration (Campbell et al. 2006; Abril et al. 2008; Thaysen et al. 2014). Supporting
948 processes such as limiting water flow through waste zones, sorption of compounds and biological
949 degradation help to regulate contaminant release to the biosphere by dilution, dispersion, retardation,
950 and decay (e.g., see section 2.1.2 for modeling of water cycling or section 3.1.2 for models of
951 buffering and filtering). This ecosystem service aims at quantifying the soil's contribution to protect
952 human health. Related examples of available models are listed in Table 1.

953 Impacts of soil contamination, waste disposal or site remediation are typically assessed with risk
954 assessment (chemotoxic compounds) or radiological impact (radioactive waste) models. Although the
955 safety or protection provided by a disposal system is primarily focused on isolation and containment,
956 quantification of dilution and dispersion and bioaccumulation in soils systems is highly relevant for
957 impact calculations by biosphere models (Smith et al. 2014). Particularly within the framework of
958 radiological impact studies, time-scales could be several tens of thousands to hundreds of thousands
959 of years.

960 Typically, engineered covers are put in place in typical landfills with hazardous materials. For near-
961 surface disposal systems for low-radio-active waste disposal, as well as for high-radioactive wastes
962 (Rosenberger 2009) cement-based structures are buried under an engineered layered system of natural
963 materials (Flach et al. 2007). Although covers could have an isolation function, protecting humans
964 and other biota from the waste, their main functions are related to provide a stable physical and
965 chemical soil environment for the waste and to limit water flow into the waste zones. Stable chemical
966 conditions are related to durability in physical (e.g., cracking, increase in permeability) and chemical
967 (sorption and solubility) terms affected by detrimental geochemical processes in the cement-based
968 system (Glasser et al. 2008; Wang et al. 2013). Geochemical degrading and leaching processes are
969 driven by soil pore water composition (Jacques et al. 2010) and thus different soil processes such as
970 weathering, microbiological and chemical processes (e.g., oxidation of pyrite in clay barriers) play a
971 crucial role. The engineered barrier will also limit the water flow through the waste zone. The
972 properties of the engineered barriers could be optimized to favor the evaporative capacity of the
973 barrier, i.e. increasing water holding capacity of the top water to promote evapotranspiration, or the
974 divergence capacity by increasing lateral flow.

975
976 When contaminants are released into the soil, their transport and fate are governed by similar
977 physical, chemical and biological processes, and pose similar modeling challenges, as described for

978 both the buffering and filtering regulating services. The main variable of interest is the flux across
979 environmental compartments such as the groundwater, biosphere and atmosphere. A particular
980 challenge is the development of a soil-like profile in the engineered barrier that alters its relevant
981 physical, hydrological, chemical, and biological properties thereby altering their required
982 performance. For that purpose, long-terms field-experiment of years to decades (Albright et al. 2004;
983 Nyhan 2005) must be combined with natural or archaeological analogues (e.g., burial tombs) to
984 benchmark conceptual and mathematical models. To deal with extremely long time scales, models
985 should be able to incorporate long-term changes in climate, landforms and other relevant boundary
986 conditions. Integrated methodological approaches need to be developed to verify such models,
987 beyond the time-scale of instrumental observations, for example by including proxy variables serving
988 as (paleo)indicators of past hydrological conditions (e.g., vegetation, soil, or historical archives; e.g.,
989 Zwertvaegher et al. (2013), Zlinszky and Timár (2013)). As in simulating soil formation (section
990 2.1.1), many input variables are uncertain as they are in essence unknown for future conditions.
991 Nevertheless, soil waste modeling as described herein requires the same kind of scenario-like
992 quantification, as well as collaborations with related modeling communities.

993

994 **3.2 Provisioning services**

995 **3.2.1 Biomass production for food, fiber and energy**

996 By providing and storing nutrients and water, as well as serving as mechanical support for plants, soil
997 plays a central role in biomass production. Soil also provides biochemical support for plant-essential
998 symbionts. Optimizing crop and biofuel production relies on a thorough understanding of plant
999 requirements, soil water and nutrient availability, and on plant uptake mechanisms. This can be partly
1000 achieved via experimental work, but modeling is needed to investigate complex interactions and
1001 feedbacks between bulk soil, rhizosphere and plant systems under environmental constraints.
1002 Examples of models addressing this ecosystem service are listed in Table 1.

1003

1004 Plants change their bulk soil environment to maximize nutrient and water availability, affecting
1005 nutrient and water cycling (section 2.1.2). Interacting biological, chemical and physical processes
1006 affect crop root uptake and production (Lynch 2007; Hinsinger et al. 2009; Richardson et al. 2009;
1007 Den Herder et al. 2010; Smith et al. 2011), especially under limiting conditions. The elements most
1008 often limiting to production are the macronutrients N, P and K, although growth may be limited by
1009 supply of any of the essential elements. Many soil processes are directly affected by plant activities,
1010 especially in the rhizosphere. Because of soil-root-microbial interactions, the biophysical and chemical
1011 properties of the rhizosphere are different from those of the bulk soil.

1012

1013 To meet the crop nutrient demand, nutrients must be transported from the bulk soil into the
1014 rhizosphere towards the root surface (Marschner and Marschner 1995). The most simple single root

1015 uptake model considers soil nutrient transport by convection and diffusion, desorption of nutrients
1016 from the soil solid phase, and uptake at the root surface, as by Michaelis-Menten kinetics (Darrah et al.
1017 2006). For nutrients of low mobility, uptake models include root hairs, root exudation and arbuscular
1018 mycorrhizal fungi in either rhizosphere scale models (Schnepf et al. 2008a; Schnepf et al. 2008b;
1019 Schnepf et al. 2012) or in root system scale models (Tinker and Nye 2000; Roose et al. 2001; Schnepf
1020 et al. 2012). In addition, nutrient uptake models have been coupled with water flow models (Somma et
1021 al. 1998; Roose and Fowler 2004). Rhizosphere modeling includes root-induced changes in soil
1022 hydraulic properties through mucilage exudation and related effects on water and solute dynamics in
1023 the root zone as presented by Carminati and Vetterlein (2013). However, the release of rhizodeposits
1024 by roots and associated microbial activity enhances soil organic matter decomposition Kuzyakov and
1025 Domanski (2000); and would require the inclusion of microbial and carbon dynamics Darrah (1991).
1026 Besides nutrients, plants also need water. The adequate description of water stress onset and water
1027 uptake distribution in soil is crucial for predicting plant growth transpiration flux and crop yield.
1028 Although we know water transpiration stream is driven by climatic demand and controlled by plant
1029 and soil, questions remain regarding the location and magnitude of controlling or regulating
1030 mechanisms for plant water flow (Lobet et al. 2014).

1031
1032 Bulk soil acts as a storage for water, and rhizosphere hydraulic properties control the availability of
1033 water to plants (Couvreur et al. 2014). Root segment scale models -called mesoscopic- have been
1034 developed, which explicitly solve axisymmetric Richards equation around a given root segment
1035 (Philip, 1957; Gardner, 1960; Raats, 2007) and allow one to estimate the soil hydraulic resistance. Yet,
1036 soil compaction induced by root growth, shrinkage-swelling of roots and soil leading to gap formation
1037 between soil and root and specific non equilibrium processes induced by mucilage for instance
1038 challenge these equations.

1039 At the plant scale -called macroscopic scale- different approaches exist to account for root water
1040 uptake. Typically a sink term is included in the Richards equation, where is included soil resistance,
1041 plant root distribution, climatic demand and sometimes a compensation term (Javaux et al. (2013). The
1042 challenge is to find a mathematical expression for the root water uptake (or sink term), that best
1043 represents the key mechanisms embedded in a numerically acceptable level of complexity for the
1044 application. The upscaling of complex and dynamic rhizosphere processes can be assessed with the
1045 help of mathematical modeling (Roose and Schnepf 2008). Different 1D models have recently been
1046 proposed (de Jong van Lier et al., 2008; Jarvis, 2011). Couvreur et al., (2012) developed a simple 1-D
1047 solution, considering complex 3-D representations of root architecture. Siqueira et al. (2008)
1048 suggested solving two 1-D Richards equations to represent 3-D root water uptake. Novel root growth
1049 models and tomography techniques have recently allowed the development of 3-D models (Dunbabin
1050 et al., 2013) that explicitly represent the root system architecture an connect it to a sink term (see

1051 Figure 4 with an example of a 3-D simulation of root water uptake using the R-SWMS model (Javaux
1052 et al. 2008).

1053 At larger scale, the availability of many different models for root water uptake translates into high
1054 uncertainty in predicting transpiration. For land surface models, Wang and Dickinson (2012) showed
1055 that the ratio of transpiration to total evapotranspiration ranged from 0.25 to 0.64 for 10 widely
1056 accepted models, with an average of 0.42. This uncertainty is due to the poor representation/validation
1057 of root water uptake modules, in particular under dry conditions (Li et al., 2013; Canal et al., 2014)
1058 and in terms of compensation mechanisms (Tang et al., 2015).

1059
1060 Figure 4 HERE

1061
1062 An additional modeling challenge is to link soil-root zone processes at the rhizosphere scale to the
1063 spatially-variable landscape scale (Katul et al., 2012). Land surface or crop models typically have grid
1064 size between 100 m² and 100 km², in which plants uptake is modeled in 0- or 1-D for sake of
1065 simplicity and computational efficiency. In 0-D, when spatially explicit information is not available,
1066 the effects of soil properties on nutrient and water uptake is treated simply by considering total
1067 availability and access of soil water and nutrients in the soil. More advanced crop models apply 1D
1068 soil modeling, using a simplified water balance and simple root depth models (Gerwitz and Page
1069 1974) and thereby neglecting spatial variations in soil water/nutrient content and uptake rates.
1070 However, in spatially-variable soil-root condition, the one-dimensional assumption does not hold and
1071 may lead to erroneous results of ET and crop yield, especially in soil-stressed conditions (Roose and
1072 Fowler 2004).

1073
1074

1075 **3.2.2 Soil physical support**

1076 Most terrestrial ecosystems rely on soil for their physical support and stability. The functional design
1077 of plant roots is optimized for sufficient anchorage to the ground (Coultts 1983; Coultts 1986; Coultts et
1078 al. 1999). Particularly large trees and perennial shrubs have roots systems that are intimately linked
1079 with the soil underneath, which enables them to support the enormous weight of their own biomass
1080 and external loads (such as animals and snow) as well as dynamic stresses from wind, debris flow, and
1081 surface runoff (Stokes et al. 2014). Soils also bear the weight of all terrestrial animals and provide
1082 habitat to burrowing animals including rodents, birds, and insects. At finer scales, soils provide
1083 physical support to microbial communities. The highly modified environment in the rhizosphere as
1084 well as biological soil crusts in many desert ecosystems provide stable microstructure that serves as a
1085 habitat for microbial communities. In summary, physical support service provided by soils is an
1086 essential ingredient for the health and sustainability of terrestrial ecosystems. Soils also provide direct
1087 support services to engineered structures as well as human activities. In many places, soil—in the form

1088 of mud bricks and dirt roofs—literally serves as a physical shelter. Likewise, unpaved dirt roads and
1089 paths are vital access routes and essential in management of natural resources.

1090 A soil is able to provide the above stated services when its strength is sufficient to support the stresses
1091 exerted upon it, yet not too strong to resist necessary deformations, such as for root growth and animal
1092 burrowing. Therefore, a great deal of research related to soil as a physical support system has been
1093 directed towards understanding distribution and propagation of stress and strain in soil as well as in
1094 quantifying the underlying rheological characteristics (including elasticity, plasticity and viscosity)
1095 (Baumgarten et al. 2013; Hallett et al. 2013). The ability of heavy clay soils to provide physical
1096 support may also be compromised when they swell and shrink upon wetting and drying, respectively.
1097 In the US alone, expansive soils cause billions of dollars of damage to civil structures (Thomas et al.
1098 2000). However, we need in total to include in all our modelling approaches also the aspect of rigidity,
1099 because the swell shrink processes alter the reference volume and may result in a complete
1100 overestimation of e.g., flux processes (Horn et al. 2014) Similarly, drainage of peatlands and soft
1101 organic soils causes substantial consolidation that adversely impacts their physical support service
1102 (Schwarzel et al. 2002). The latter is further exacerbated by progressive organic matter loss from
1103 drained soils (Dawson et al. 2010).

1104
1105 To gain a full perspective on the soil's physical support services, we need to have quantitative
1106 understanding of the following key aspects of soil strength: (1) mechanisms of support in relation to
1107 specific soil strength parameters; mainly tensile strength, compressive strength, and resistance to stress
1108 dependent shearing; (2) properties that define shrink-swell potential of clays and compressibility of
1109 peats; (3) soil strength thresholds relevant for the physical support functions; (4) temporal dynamics of
1110 soil strength and its relations with soil moisture and temperature; and (5) spatial variability of soil
1111 strength at multiple scales and 6) alteration in physical support through the growth or degradation of
1112 biological structures such as plant roots.

1113
1114 Fundamentally, the ability of soils to provide physical support functions is a product of interplay
1115 between stabilizing and destabilizing processes. The key stabilizing processes include: soil
1116 aggregation, which is mediated by a variety of physical, chemical, and biological processes;
1117 cementation by mineral deposits; as well as stabilization by burrowing animals. Soil stabilization is
1118 continually countered by destabilizing processes including shearing forces, dynamic mechanical
1119 stresses, static loads, and slaking.

1120
1121 Theories and models of soil as a physical support system must involve the following key elements: (1)
1122 basic theories and modeling capability concerning mechanical strength, stress, strain and their
1123 distribution in soils, which are generally well understood for most soil conditions over wide scale
1124 ranges; (2) reliable techniques to quantifying stresses and strains, which are also well developed

1125 especially for stress propagation under traffic; (3) combined physical, chemical, and biological
1126 processes as the most influential parameters to strengthen soil systems including the dynamic stress
1127 strength changes due to hydraulic processes also in mechanical theories; and (4) quantitative
1128 understanding of particle-scale soil strengthening and further extrapolation from the interparticle to the
1129 meso- or macroscale.

1130

1131 The major open questions with regards to physical support functions of soil are needed for mechanistic
1132 understanding and modeling of: (1) transient phenomena, including short-term elastic and elastoplastic
1133 responses as well as transient coupled interactions between mechanical, hydraulic and biogeochemical
1134 processes; (2) stabilizing and destabilizing processes; (3) stress dependent changes of soil hydraulic,
1135 thermal and gas diffusion processes.

1136

1137 **3.2.3 Soil and biological habitat**

1138

1139 Life in soil follows much the same pattern as human life on the surface of the planet. For life to
1140 persist, soil microbes require sufficient accessible food resources, water, safe refuges from predators,
1141 and gaseous and hydraulic transport pathways through which they move (if motile) and be active. In
1142 terms of the soil geometry to provide the physical living habitat, key soil attributes are its porosity and
1143 its continuity and level of connectivity in space and time. Thus, soil pore/hydraulic connectivity,
1144 specific surface area and tortuosity become key determinants of all processes that impact on soil life.
1145 The spatial distribution of porosity and nutrients determine distances between active microbes (and
1146 roots), whereas the connected porosity determines the rate at which soil gases as CO₂ and O₂ can
1147 diffuse between microbial active sites. Therefore, the soil water characteristic becomes one of the
1148 most important relationship in soil ecology (Assouline 2013).

1149

1150 A traditional approach to understanding and modeling of the soil habitat, driven by the need to capture
1151 field relevant and observable metrics, has been coarse structural measures, together with some
1152 measure of 'structure' through aggregate/pore size distribution/stability. The latter has driven the
1153 majority of research in this area despite the fact that the level of aggregation is the relevant metric to
1154 capture and understand for most soils (Young et al. 2001). Many conceptual models on aggregates
1155 exist (Six et al. 2004), but are rarely put into actual mechanistic models. However, understanding the
1156 relevance of soil architecture within as it varies over time is a difficult task due to the complexity of
1157 the processes at hand and the significant spatial-temporal soil dynamics. In addition, what delineates
1158 soil from all other porous media is the myriad of life and its impact on the soil's physical architecture
1159 (Young et al. 2001). Soil formation is discussed in section 2.1.1; in section 2.1.4 the incredible
1160 diversity and abundance of microbes is addressed.

1161 The challenge in relation to modeling habitat space is its linking to the relevant functions.
1162 Biodiversity research in soils has failed generally to account for the soil habitat that controls many of
1163 the relevant processes that generate soil biodiversity, the probability of movement of microbes and
1164 higher organisms; the probability of gene transfer and the impact of pathogens on crop plants
1165 Therefore, the inclusion of the soil's habitat in biodiversity modeling (Young and Crawford 2014) will
1166 ensure evaluations of the importance of soil geometry on soil biodiversity, including effects of spatial
1167 isolation and population connectedness (Zhou et al. 2002).

1168 Notwithstanding the difficult challenge of quantifying biological processes in any natural
1169 environment, modeling soil biological processes present specific challenges related to the complex and
1170 heterogeneous medium, limited observational capability into the opaque soil, and the wide range of
1171 scales where biological activity matters. The issue of scale is particularly difficult as modelers are
1172 required to consider interactions taking place at the scale of microbial communities in pores (Young
1173 and Crawford 2004; Or et al. 2007) all the way to root function affecting soil processes over large
1174 expanses of agricultural lands and forests (Dimitrov et al. 2014). Description of dynamic changes in
1175 flow and transport and the response of biological agents to the changes in aquatic habitats for microbes
1176 (Wang and Or 2013), or the dynamic formation of micro-niches within soil aggregates that promote
1177 denitrification (e.g., Tiedje et al. 1982) , require the balance between root uptake and deep drainage
1178 and other soil physical and chemical processes. Adding to the challenge is the soil opacity that hinders
1179 direct observations and thus necessitating surrogate measures and methods to obtain model
1180 parameters. Soil biological activity alter pore geometry characteristics, and related soil transport
1181 parameters. The changes and associated feedbacks may be gradual and slow (root growth), or occur
1182 overnight (earthworm burrows, ants and termites) thereby drastically modifying soil conditions

1183

1184 **4 Challenges in dealing with soil heterogeneity and uncertainty**

1185 Major challenges in soil modeling across all sub-disciplines arise from the fact that the soil
1186 environment is very heterogeneous, that processes occur over a multitude of spatial and temporal
1187 scales and that one has to deal with uncertainties in both models and data. It is the objective of this
1188 section to discuss these issues. In the first part, the effect of heterogeneity on the system's functioning
1189 at various scales and how this is translated into model concepts and model parameterizations is
1190 discussed. Heterogeneities and hierarchical structures may lead to different system's behaviour
1191 requiring different model concepts to describe processes at different scales and locations. The second
1192 part discusses how appropriate model concepts and model parameters can be inferred from
1193 observations, bearing in mind that observations may be uncertain, variable in space and not
1194 representative for the scale at which model predictions are made. Sophisticated model concepts and
1195 parameterization procedures increase the precision of model predictions at the location where
1196 measurements used to parameterize the model are obtained. However, local conditions and predictions

1197 may not be representative so that the accuracy of precise local predictions may be low for the
1198 conditions and the region for which predictions are requested. The third part addresses the issue of
1199 prediction precision and accuracy and its consequences for model selection and parameterizations.

1200

1201 **4.1 Heterogeneity: aggregate to landscape, microbe to forest, grains to ecology**

1202 Most soil processes and related soil ecosystem functions dealt with in this paper depend in one way or
1203 another on the architecture of soils, which determines the geometry and topology of the pore space
1204 inhabited by soil biota and through which water, gases, solutes and particulate matter transit. The
1205 architecture of soils is acknowledged as being heterogeneous at many different scales, all the way
1206 from the distribution of soils across the landscape down to microscopic pore networks and the
1207 molecular structure of biogeochemical interfaces.

1208

1209 At large spatial scales (field to landscape scale), the distribution of soils is mainly determined by
1210 geology, topography, climate and land use, whereas at smaller scales (pedon to pore scale) the
1211 continuous flow of energy promotes physical and biochemical structure formation. This produces
1212 characteristic soil architectures that typically change vertically along the main direction of flow and
1213 transport within soil profiles. Because of the non-linearity of the different interacting processes of
1214 structure formation and decay, these changes are often distinct, leading to heterogeneous structures
1215 and vertical organization of soils (e.g., layered soil profiles).

1216

1217 An immediate consequence of the heterogeneous structure of the subsurface across spatial and
1218 temporal scales is that observed flow rates of water, gases and solutes, or the dynamics of state
1219 variables such as soil moisture, temperature and biological activity, typically depend on the scale of
1220 observation. Thus, models of soil processes (e.g., flow and transport or matter turnover) need to
1221 account for this heterogeneity and we will discuss possible options and limitations in this section. A
1222 major challenge when one attempts to model physical, chemical, or biological processes in soils is the
1223 opacity of soil materials that hampers the quantification of their architecture .

1224

1225 An optimistic “fundamental approach” to represent a soil would be to describe it at the pore-scale with
1226 for instance Stokes equation describing the flux of water and air, Young-Laplace equation describing
1227 the vapor-liquid interfaces, multi-component transport equations with associated equilibrium relations
1228 at phase boundaries, a slew of equations for the multitude of chemical interactions, and yet more
1229 complicated representations of the microbial realm. For any reasonably sized soil volume, however,
1230 this is clearly neither possible due to the lack of detailed information and limited computing power,
1231 nor is it desirable because of the sheer flood of mostly redundant information. Thus, it is one of the
1232 recent challenges to develop more theoretical approaches that deliver correct representations of a given

1233 range of subscales and range of small-scale processes that reproduce the system's behavior at a larger
1234 scale with a desired level of accuracy (Daly and Roose 2015).

1235

1236 The general approach to gain a representation at some larger (macroscopic) scale is to average the
1237 pertinent processes at the corresponding smaller (microscopic) scale over an appropriate domain.
1238 Necessary prerequisites for this approach to work are (1) the macroscopic quantities are robust with
1239 respect to changes in the averaging domain and (2) the microscopic quantities are in thermodynamic
1240 equilibrium at the scale of the averaging domain. Given the wide temporal spectrum of forcings, e.g.,
1241 through precipitation, such an averaging is restricted to rather small domains. The issue is further
1242 exacerbated by nonlinear processes like soil water flow, transport of reactive solutes, freeze-thaw
1243 cycles, or evaporation-condensation processes, which are all capable of generating sharp fronts and
1244 intricate patterns. The proper handling of such processes remains an open research question. Current
1245 engineering solutions typically involve the postulates that (1) the large-scale mathematical
1246 formulations are of the same form as those at small scales and (2) so-called "effective
1247 parameterizations" can be found, which complement the large-scale formulations. An example is the
1248 consideration of non-equilibrium phenomena by decoupling state variables through an additional
1249 equation at the larger scale (Ross and Smettem 2000). These effective parameters are typically gained
1250 from inverting physical numerical models. However, there is no evidence that the postulates are valid.
1251 It appears that proceeding to larger scales – to a field or even to a larger catchment – demands
1252 numerical simulations of the pertinent multi-scale processes and quickly runs into supercomputer
1253 applications that include self-adaptive discretizations.

1254

1255 In the case of biological processes such as microbial activity, subsurface heterogeneity fosters the
1256 coexistence of biochemical processes that cannot be captured or reproduced experimentally in
1257 homogenized materials. This is true for the concurrence of aerobic and anaerobic processes as well as
1258 for the turnover of organic matter in general, which is promoted or hampered depending on the relative
1259 spatial distribution of soil biota and substrate. While its importance is well recognized, it is still
1260 unclear how to represent this heterogeneity in modeling biological activity and organic matter
1261 turnover.

1262

1263 *Model concepts*

1264 Homogenization is a possible approach in case the various scales of heterogeneity are clearly
1265 separable, so that information from small scales can be transferred to larger scales in a meaningful
1266 way. In this case, small-scale heterogeneities can be averaged in time or space towards homogenized
1267 large-scale models that account for all the essential ingredients from the small-scale processes.
1268 Separable scales might rather be expected at small scales when moving from soil pores to aggregates
1269 and up to soil horizons. Here we can identify different levels of macroscopic homogeneity. Examples

1270 for homogenization include derivation of the Darcy flow and Richards equation (Daly and Roose
1271 2015), solute movement in the soil with dual porous structure (Zygalakis and Roose 2012), uptake of
1272 nutrients by root hairs (Leitner et al. 2010; Zygalakis et al. 2011), and effects of exudation by cluster
1273 roots and resulting plant P uptake (Zygalakis and Roose 2012).

1274
1275 If the scales of heterogeneity are interlaced and nested – which is typically the case at the pedon scale
1276 and beyond – modeling soil processes needs to be adapted to the spatial or temporal scale representing
1277 the relevant heterogeneity at this scale. The crucial question is to determine what is “relevant“. The
1278 dissipative nature of most processes may help to address this question. In some cases, perturbations at
1279 a given scale may smear out when the observation scale becomes much larger. This may not be true
1280 when the perturbations at the microscopic scale are associated with microbial activity. However, this
1281 assumption applies for example for the transport of solutes through the soil pore network that develops
1282 towards a volume-averaged Fickian regime once the transport distance is much larger than the
1283 characteristic heterogeneities within the flow field. Another example is the rapid drainage or filling of
1284 single pores that translate into a smooth curve, known as the soil water retention curve, at the larger
1285 scale. In both cases, the problem faced in reality is that heterogeneities at larger scales emerge before
1286 the limit of a well-defined macroscopic behavior is reached. A possible way to deal with this is to
1287 explicitly include the heterogeneity at the well-defined sub-scale, while heterogeneities at the sub-sub-
1288 scale and smaller scales are described by effective parameterizations/averaging (Vogel and Roth
1289 2003). Examples, where this concept is typically applied include (1) water dynamics in soil profiles
1290 where effective mean hydraulic properties are used for soil horizons, (2) water and gas exchange
1291 between the soil and the atmosphere, where the lateral distribution of soil types is considered, and (3)
1292 solute transport in groundwater, where only the coarse structure of the conductivity field is explicitly
1293 considered, while smaller-scale heterogeneities are integrated into an effective dispersivity length.

1294
1295 Concerning biochemical processes, the vast abundance of biodiversity in soils may allow for
1296 simplified representations at larger scales since biological communities and their biological potential
1297 and activity are controlled by the local site conditions and the metabolism of individual organisms in
1298 any specific part of the pore space is not relevant. This might be true for highly productive soils in
1299 humid regions. However, especially in water-scarce systems, the feedback between soil biota, organic
1300 matter and water dynamics leads to complex patterns of system development (Jenerette et al. 2012)
1301 that are just starting to be explored.

1302
1303 *Exploring heterogeneity*
1304 Several recent technologies conceptual tools provide novel information on subsurface heterogeneity.
1305 Among these new methods are non-invasive 3-dimensional methods such as micro computed
1306 tomography (μ CT) and chemical imaging, geophysics and remote sensing with platforms ranging from

1307 unmanned air vehicles (UAV) to satellites. These methods differ widely in their capability, resolution,
1308 accuracy, and precision (see section 6). Their most interesting aspects are the scales of resolution and
1309 view. Some may be used in an undisturbed field situation, while others are only applicable in carefully
1310 prepared lab environments. Some capture the entire volume of interest, others just its surface.
1311 Furthermore, the quantity of interest is often not observed directly, but only indirectly via a proxy.
1312 This requires the development of appropriate transfer functions which are often just empirical relations
1313 that need data-intensive calibration procedures.

1314

1315 The final challenge in representing the functional structure of the subsurface irrespective of the target
1316 scale is the coherent integration of all the information on (1) the multi-scale architecture (including the
1317 respective material properties), (2) the process formulation for the chosen range of scales, (3) the
1318 system's coupling to the environment, which is typically represented as an external forcing but should
1319 also include the feedbacks to the atmosphere and/or groundwater, and (4) the available data, which
1320 often need to be transferred into the chosen range of scales. In this context, top-down approaches can
1321 be highly attractive to make use of the multitude of available information, which will certainly
1322 increase in the near future, quantitatively as well as qualitatively. However, a bottom-up approach
1323 rooted in fundamental basic science observations is required to complement the top-down approach
1324 since ultimately the integration of the two, top-down and bottom-up approaches and their synergy will
1325 enable the synthesizing of new scientific knowledge about soil systems. A joint analysis towards a
1326 consistent description of terrestrial systems may help to come up with an adequate representation.

1327

1328 **4.2 Formalisms for considering uncertainties related to model choice**

1329 Uncertainties in soil models may arise on the conceptual level (model choice), on parameter level
1330 (insufficient calibration data), through measurement errors, from stochasticity of system forcing and
1331 from scaling issues. Multi-model ensemble simulations, (e.g., Neuman 2003; Clark et al. 2008;
1332 Wöhling et al. 2008; Gupta et al. 2012), such as Bayesian Model Averaging (BMA) are a promising
1333 approach to quantify these uncertainties. BMA reflects conceptual uncertainty through a weighted
1334 average of model-wise ensembles. Each model ensemble represents parametric within-model
1335 uncertainty, restricted to the available data through Bayesian updating (conditional simulation). The
1336 model weights are given by the so-called Bayesian model evidence (BE), which corresponds to $P(\mathbf{D})$
1337 in Eq. 5. BE expresses how good a model (including its uncertain parameters before conditioning)
1338 matches the available data (including their possible measurement errors), combined with a priori
1339 expert knowledge on model plausibility. Recently, Wöhling et al. (2015) demonstrated the advantages
1340 of BMA approaches for soil modeling. Unfortunately, the BMA approach is challenged by two facts.
1341 First, evaluating BE requires Monte-Carlo techniques to evaluate the fitting quality (on average over
1342 its uncertain parameters) of each model. This may become computationally prohibitive for models
1343 with long run times and with many uncertain parameters (requiring very large ensembles in the BMA

1344 context). As an alternative, the so-called information criteria (IC) such as the AIC, BIC, or KIC
1345 (Akaike, Bayesian, or Kashyap information criterion, respectively) are computationally much more
1346 feasible approximations to BE. However, a recent study by Schöniger (2014) demonstrates that IC
1347 often provide very inaccurate approximations to BE and thus can provide misleading results. Instead,
1348 the study reviews and benchmarks a list of alternative numerical schemes for more efficient
1349 computation of BME that pose many additional future research questions on statistical-numerical
1350 level.

1351
1352 The second challenge in BMA is constructing a set of competing models to adequately reflect
1353 conceptual uncertainty (i.e. to test different, plausible hypotheses of the soil-plant system behavior),
1354 and to ensure that a model sufficiently close to the “real” system is included. In many applications,
1355 however, building a model is time consuming and expensive, or only a single system
1356 conceptualization is readily available. Even if a large set of plausible models exists, the entire set
1357 may, in hindsight, seem inadequate upon comparison to extensive and accurate data sets.

1358
1359 Outside the BMA context, parameter-related uncertainty after calibration can be quantified through
1360 classical Bayesian inference (cf. Section 4.5) and by Markov chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) simulation
1361 techniques (e.g., Vrugt et al. 2009; Wohling and Vrugt 2011). MCMC is computationally more
1362 efficient than the brute-force Monte Carlo sampling required to operate BMA. Still, depending on the
1363 number of model parameters, the complexity of the problem and the data set size, MCMC can require
1364 up to 10^6 or more model evaluations. If MCMC is infeasible, uncertainty quantification is still
1365 possible when assuming that all model parameters and measurement errors follow multi-Gaussian
1366 distributions (at least after transformation) and that the model equations can be linearized, and then
1367 using linear error propagation (Moore and Doherty 2005). However, soil-plant models are typically
1368 highly non-linear, so that linearized techniques must be treated with extreme care.

1369
1370 Because soil models often involve many state variables (e.g., soil moisture, matric head, transpiration,
1371 soil heat flux, etc.), the choice of data types for the above analyses plays an exceptionally large role.
1372 Different data types carry different information about the individual compartments and their
1373 respective processes (Vereecken et al. 2008). Therefore, the choice of data types has a large impact on
1374 the resulting model predictions, model performance, or model selection outcome as shown by
1375 Wöhling et al. (2015). In such situations, multi-objective optimization (e.g., Marler and Arora 2004;
1376 Reed et al. 2013) is a valuable tool to test how soil models fit to different data types (Priyabrata
1377 Santra 2009; Wohling et al. 2013) used multi-objective optimization as a diagnostic tool to detect
1378 model structure errors and found large contrasts in the fitting quality to individual or combined data
1379 types. They also showed that an inadequate choice of calibration data sets may result in unrealistic
1380 parameter estimates and poor predictive performance, particularly for quantities that have not been

1381 included in model calibration. Soil monitoring in the past has been largely restricted to a limited set of
1382 standard observations (e.g., soil moisture) which may or may not be decisive to inform the parameter
1383 inference or model selection process. Therefore, the worth of different and new data types for the
1384 performance and robustness of predictive models is an area of research that needs further attention.

1385

1386 **4.3 Does local-scale model complexity matter for predictions at larger scales?**

1387 For local predictions, the processes and the parameters of the process model need to be described as
1388 precisely and accurately as possible. Due to soil heterogeneity, information that is available about
1389 local soil parameters or about state variables or fluxes that are used to parameterize the model is very
1390 uncertain. This uncertainty is propagated into uncertainty about predictions which may therefore be
1391 imprecise. However, for several practical applications, not the predictions at a certain given site and
1392 time but the distribution of a certain variable in a specific region over a certain period are required. For
1393 predictions of the percentile of the distribution in a region the set of conditions in the region needs to
1394 be represented as precisely as possible. This implies that the model should be able to represent the
1395 conditions in time and space that represent the distribution of conditions for the area and time period
1396 that is considered. The question arises therefore whether it is more important to have spatial and
1397 temporal coverage of information that is required to run a simplified and locally less precise model or
1398 whether it is better to use a more detailed and precise representation of the processes at a limited
1399 number of locations and time periods. The problem of the second approach is that the relevance of the
1400 predictions for the region and time period of interest cannot be evaluated based on the lack of spatial
1401 and temporal coverage of the model parameters and boundary conditions. The distribution which is
1402 predicted based on a limited number of conditions or situations may therefore lack accuracy.

1403 An illustrative example is the process of pesticide risk assessment for pesticide registration (Leterme
1404 et al. 2007; Vanderborght et al. 2011). The general principles and questions may also be transferred to
1405 other soil processes and predictions. The pesticide fate parameters (sorption and degradation) often
1406 vary strongly with location, however their variation cannot be predicted or derived from other soil
1407 properties, hence these parameters are often treated as stochastic parameters. In pesticide risk
1408 assessment, the question arises whether a prediction with a detailed process model that requires
1409 detailed information about soil properties (including for instance a parameterization of preferential
1410 flow and transport) and temporal information of meteorological variables (rainfall data with high
1411 temporal resolution to capture rainfall intensities that trigger preferential flow) is to be preferred over a
1412 prediction with a much simpler model that considers only yearly rainfall amounts and uses information
1413 about soil texture and organic matter. The problem with the first approach is that an area-wide
1414 parameterization of a detailed model may not be possible due to a lack of data. For instance, detailed
1415 soil and weather data may not be available and the area-wide parameterization of preferential flow
1416 models still poses a problem, although recent advances have been made in the development of
1417 pedotransfer functions (see section 6.3) for these types of models (Moeys et al. 2012; Tiktak et al.

1418 2012). The second problem is that computational resources may still be limiting to carry out
1419 simulations for millions of scenarios that are required to represent the distribution of soil, vegetation
1420 (crop) and weather conditions and to consider uncertainties or spatial variability of stochastic
1421 parameters that cannot be mapped. A workaround for this problem is to use meta-models which are
1422 calibrated on a limited number of simulation runs that are carried out using more detailed models
1423 (Tiktak et al. 2006; Stenemo et al. 2007). Such meta-models are simple regression models that make a
1424 direct link between available input parameters and the model output of interest. The structure of the
1425 regression model can be based on analytical solutions of the process model that are obtained for
1426 certain boundary and initial conditions. Since they are much simpler, meta-models can easily be used
1427 to make predictions for a large number of scenarios and conditions. This allows evaluating the effect
1428 of stochastic parameters on the spatial and temporal distribution of the prediction of interest, which
1429 generally requires a large number of simulations. In general, stochastic parameters lead to wider
1430 distributions of predictions in a certain region for a certain time period (Heuvelink et al. 2010;
1431 Vanderborght et al. 2011). In addition, the error in meta-model predictions (lack of precision) could be
1432 treated in a similar way as the uncertainty due to stochasticity of the parameters. It is trivial that
1433 uncertainty about the parameters or stochasticity and lack of precision of the model may lead to large
1434 uncertainties in the predictions at a certain location. This prediction uncertainty can be reduced by
1435 determining the specific parameters at that location using for instance inverse modeling. However, the
1436 accuracy of this parameterized model to make predictions at other locations, where parameters are
1437 unknown, is small. Although the precision of predictions at a certain location might be low due to
1438 stochasticity of parameters and lack of model precision, the distribution of the predictions in a certain
1439 region is less affected by parameter stochasticity and model uncertainty when there is a large range of
1440 conditions and properties in the region and time period.

1441

1442 Figure 5 HERE

1443

1444 **5 Numerical approaches and model data integration**

1445 Most of soil processes are strongly nonlinear and controlled by time-variable boundary conditions
1446 requiring numerical techniques to obtain solutions for states and fluxes. In this section, we discuss the
1447 most commonly used numerical approaches in modeling soil processes. Within model-data integration
1448 we refer to the term “forcing data/forcings” for data used to drive a model such as most common
1449 meteorological input including radiation, temperature, precipitation, air humidity, or wind velocity
1450 amongst others. We discuss current approaches for model-data integration in the framework of
1451 operational research, data assimilation and Bayesian methods.

1452

1453 **5.1 Numerical approaches**

1454 Advances in measurement technology, computing technology, and numerical techniques enable the
1455 development of models of ever-increasing levels of sophistication. Such models, capable of describing
1456 the inherent heterogeneity of soil environments, the temporal and spatial variability of boundary
1457 conditions, and the nonlinearity of involved processes and various constitutive relationships, are
1458 usually obtained using various numerical techniques.

1459

1460 The numerical solution of the Richards equation (Eq.1) has always been highly challenging due to its
1461 dramatic nonlinearity. Early applications of numerical methods for solving variably-saturated flow
1462 problems generally used classical finite differences. Integrated finite differences, finite volumes, and
1463 finite element methods became increasingly popular in the seventies and thereafter. While finite
1464 difference methods today are used in a majority of one-dimensional models, finite volume methods
1465 and/or finite element methods coupled with mass lumping of the mass balance term are usually used in
1466 two- and three-dimensional models. Finite element and finite volume methods used with unstructured
1467 triangular and tetrahedral elements allow for a more precise description of complex transport domains
1468 compared to finite differences. Most popularly used vadose zone flow models (e.g., van Dam 1997;
1469 Šimůnek et al. 2008) presently utilize the mixed formulation of the Richards equation and the
1470 numerical scheme of Celia et al. (1990), which possesses mass-conserving properties for both finite
1471 element and finite difference spatial approximations. Other mass-conserving numerical approaches are
1472 also available (e.g., Rathfelder and Abriola 1994). To overcome problems of numerical stability and
1473 convergence of the numerical solution, especially for problems involving infiltration into initially dry
1474 soils, various primary variable switching techniques have been proposed (Forsyth et al. 1995; Diersch
1475 and Perrochet 1999; Krabbenhoft 2007). Advances in numerical techniques allowing coarser spatial
1476 and temporal discretizations are urgently needed (Vogel and Ippisch 2008).

1477

1478 The numerical solution of the convection-dispersion equation (Eq. 2) presents a different challenge,
1479 due to its simultaneous parabolic and hyperbolic character. Methods available to numerically solve the
1480 convection-dispersion solute transport equation can be broadly classified into three groups: (1)
1481 Eulerian, (2) Lagrangian (or method of characteristics), and (3) mixed Lagrangian-Eulerian methods.
1482 In the Eulerian approach, well suited for parabolic equations, the transport equation is discretized by
1483 means of a usual finite difference or finite element method using a fixed grid system. For the
1484 Lagrangian approach, (e.g., methods of characteristics), well suited for hyperbolic equations, the mesh
1485 moves along with the flow, or remains fixed in a deforming coordinate system. A two-step procedure
1486 is followed for a mixed Lagrangian-Eulerian approach. First, convective transport is considered using
1487 a Lagrangian approach in which Lagrangian concentrations are estimated from particle trajectories.
1488 Subsequently, all other processes including sinks and sources are modeled with an Eulerian approach
1489 using any finite element or finite difference method, leading to the final concentrations.

1490
1491 For certain problems, such as convection-dominated transport or the transport of steep fronts, the
1492 Eulerian method can lead to artificial oscillations (under or over shooting) or numerical dispersion due
1493 to truncation errors of the discretization (Neumann et al. 2011). Although these numerical oscillations
1494 can be minimized by the use of upstream weighting, this can lead to considerable numerical
1495 dispersion. Since in many applications the presence of even minimal oscillations (such as negative
1496 concentrations in reactive transport models) can corrupt the solution, there exists a large family of
1497 schemes that aim to suppress such oscillations. These schemes, which use various types of flux/slope
1498 limiters, are commonly referred to as Total Variation Diminution (TVD) schemes (e.g., Leonard 1991)
1499 and they dramatically improve the solution near steep gradients and remove under and over shoot
1500 problems by preserving local monotonicity.

1501
1502 A system of linear equations, resulting from discretization of governing partial differential equations,
1503 is usually solved using different types of iterative matrix solvers, such as the preconditioned conjugate
1504 gradient method (PCG) (e.g., Herbst et al. 2008a), the generalized conjugate residual method
1505 Orthomin (e.g., Mendoza et al. 1991), or algebraic multigrid methods such as SAMG (Jones and
1506 Woodward 2001; Stuben 2001).

1507
1508 Advances in computing technology allow development of codes that significantly decrease the
1509 computational time by distributing complex large-scale problems over multiple processors working in
1510 parallel (e.g., Vereecken 1996; Hardelauf et al. 2007). Standard parallelization approaches, such as
1511 MPI (Message Passing Interface; Balay et al. (2015) and OpenMP (Open Multi-Processing), are
1512 currently being used to develop codes for both distributed and shared memory platforms, (e.g., Steefel
1513 et al. 2015). Parallelization is especially valuable for reactive transport models, in which evaluation of
1514 various biogeochemical processes consumes substantially more computational time than evaluation of

1515 flow and transport processes. The principal benefit of parallelization is that highly complex
1516 simulations can be performed in hours on a massively parallel computer instead of weeks on a desktop
1517 computer. While such models are readily available for computer systems running Linux or Unix
1518 operating systems, they are not yet readily available for personal computers with the Windows
1519 operating systems.

1520 As most of the soil models are based on systems of partial differential equations (PDEs), generic PDE
1521 solvers that were originally developed in computational fluid dynamics are becoming more widely
1522 used in soil modeling. These tools offer the advantage that the model development can be separated
1523 from its numerical solution, at the same time providing highly efficient numerical solvers for different
1524 classes of problems. Examples are OpenFOAM (www.openfoam.org), Dune (www.dune-project.org/)
1525 or FlexPDE (www.pdesolutions.com).

1526

1527

1528 **5.2 Novel optimization methods and their application to soil modeling**

1529 Model predictions for flow and transport processes in the unsaturated zone are affected by systematic
1530 and random errors. This concerns model input parameters like saturated hydraulic conductivity, model
1531 forcings like precipitation, model initial conditions like soil moisture content or carbon pools and
1532 boundary conditions like the functioning of drainage. The model itself is also affected by errors as
1533 some processes might be misrepresented and other relevant processes not included in the model (e.g.,
1534 preferential flow). In addition, model parameters are not necessarily experimentally viable to measure,
1535 or perhaps dataneed to be transformed before it can be used within a model (inverse modeling).
1536 Temporal and spatial soil data can be expensive to collect and knowing how much data is useful for
1537 models can be hard to gauge, as discussed in Section 4.3. Upper and lower bounds can be derived for
1538 parameters and models are used to find the best estimate for those parameter values (fitting a given
1539 data set) via the use of operational research. Operational research is a discipline that uses advanced
1540 analytical methods to help find a better solution for a problem (lower cost) or predict what may
1541 happen to a commodity/resource in the future (forecasting). The advanced analytical methods are
1542 generally in the form of algorithms which are used to find the optimal solution of a problem. The main
1543 properties of an algorithm include, the run time, convergence and function calls. These properties are
1544 different between algorithms, with each algorithm having its own strengths and weaknesses for certain
1545 types of problem. For a non-trivial problem, picking the 'best' algorithm increases the chance of
1546 finding an optimal solution given desired constraints.

1547

1548 An optimization problem is generally of the form,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{minimise} & \Phi(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n) \\ \text{subject to} & g_i(\mathbf{X}) \leq 0, i = 1, \dots, n_{ic}, \\ & h_i(\mathbf{X}) = 0, i = 1, \dots, n_{ec} \end{array} \quad (\text{Equation 3})$$

1550

1551 for an objective function $\Phi(\mathbf{X})$, with n parameters ($\mathbf{X} = [X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n]$), n_{ic} inequality constraints
1552 $g(\mathbf{X})$, and n_{ec} equality constraints $h(\mathbf{X})$. The type of variables used can either be integer, continuous or
1553 mixed depending on the problem (Winston and Goldberg 2004).

1554

1555 The mathematical models used to describe water or nutrient flow or solute transport in soil and uptake
1556 into plant root systems can produce complex parameter search spaces where numerical simulations
1557 often provide the best solution. When trying to validate such models to experimental data, a set of
1558 parameters are often constrained to vary within specified upper and lower bound, ensuring a realistic
1559 solution. This often leads to a non-linear unconstrained optimization problem which can be solved
1560 using a given algorithm.

1561 Non-linear unconstrained optimization methods can be split into two categories, local and global
1562 optimization methods. Local optimization methods, or decent methods, can be categorized further into
1563 zero-, first- or second-order methods. Zero-order methods do not use any derivatives of the objective
1564 function throughout the optimization process, for example Simplex search (Nelder and Mead 1965),
1565 Hooke and Jeeves method (Al-Sultan and Al-Fawzan 1997) and a Conjugate Direction method
1566 (Powell 1964). First-order methods take first-order derivatives of the objective function throughout the
1567 optimization process, for example Gradient Descent (Guely and Siarry 1993), Quasi-Newton's method
1568 (Dennis and More 1977) and a Conjugate Gradient method (Gilbert and Nocedal 1992). As it follows,
1569 second-order methods use second-order derivatives throughout the optimization process, for example
1570 Newton's method (Battiti 1992), a trust-region method (Byrd et al. 1987) and Levenberg-Marquardt
1571 method (More 2006). First-order derivatives give an indication of which direction to search in whereas
1572 second-order derivatives give an indication of how far to search in a possible optimal direction. Local
1573 optimization methods however, converge to local optima and do not necessarily perform well on the
1574 global scale, heavily relying on good initial starting points. For complex search spaces, where there are
1575 many local optimal points, local search algorithms tend to perform worse than global search
1576 algorithms due to converging early or being stuck at one of the many local optimal points.

1577

1578 Global optimization methods can be split into two types, deterministic and stochastic. Deterministic
1579 methods involve no element of randomness and therefore any change to the optimal solution comes
1580 from different initial starting points or parameters set at the beginning of the optimization process.
1581 Deterministic global optimization algorithms include Lipschitz optimization ideas (Shubert 1972)
1582 covering methods that iteratively tighten bounds on the global solution (Hansen et al. 1991) and
1583 generalized descent methods where local optima are penalized to encourage global search (Cetin et al.
1584 1993). Stochastic global algorithms include clustering methods (Torn 1977), random search methods,
1585 for example simulated annealing (Aarts and Korst 1989) and genetic algorithms (Horst et al. 2002),

1586 and methods based on stochastic models, for example Bayesian methods (Mockus 1989), and Kriging
1587 (Krige 1952; Forrester et al. 2008) which in addition, approximates the objective function.

1588

1589 There are many algorithms available for use in global optimization, and models can range from having
1590 cheap to expensive objective functions, where the number of function calls from an algorithm can
1591 become an issue. Expensive objective functions in combination with a large number of function calls
1592 make certain algorithms unusable. A major concern with global optimization is the number of
1593 variables used within a model, where the greater the number, the bigger the search space and less
1594 likely a good solution will be found within a reasonable computational time. For problems with a large
1595 number of variables, approximations models can be used which sacrifice accuracy for speed. Such
1596 approximations can take the form of simple regression models (a type of metamodel) and due to their
1597 simplistic nature, drastically decrease the run time of an algorithm.

1598

1599 **5.3 Data assimilation**

1600 Traditionally, model-data mismatch is handled in the soil modeling community by inverse modeling
1601 techniques. Inverse modeling techniques adapt for example the uncertain soil hydraulic parameters so
1602 that observed and simulated time series of model states coincide more closely. These inverse modeling
1603 techniques are typically based on the minimization of a two-part objective function, which includes
1604 the weighted sum of squared deviations between simulated and measured states and the weighted sum
1605 of squared deviations between posterior and prior parameter values. This objective function can be
1606 derived from Bayes theorem assuming normal distributions for states, parameters and observations. In
1607 the last decade the focus has shifted towards calculating not just one, but multiple equally likely
1608 solutions for the inverse modeling problem. The Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) technique is a
1609 popular approach in this context (Vrugt et al. 2003). It is a flexible approach which does not require
1610 that states and/or parameters are normal distributed. However, a disadvantage is that a large number of
1611 model evaluations is needed for the characterization of the posterior probability density function (pdf),
1612 especially if many uncertain parameters are considered and in case many measurement data are
1613 available. Therefore, MCMC is often applied for the estimation of few parameters only, for example
1614 the soil hydraulic parameters of a limited number of soil horizons. MCMC methods have become
1615 faster with multi-method adaptive evolutionary search approaches (Vrugt and Robinson 2007; Vrugt et
1616 al. 2009). Recent developments include multiple try sampling, snooker updates and sampling from an
1617 archive of past states (Laloy and Vrugt 2012). It allows the estimation of hundreds of parameters with
1618 MCMC.

1619

1620 An interesting alternative which has emerged in the context of soil model-data fusion is sequential
1621 data assimilation (SDA). In this case, measurement data are not assimilated in a batch approach, but
1622 sequentially, stepping through time. SDA is based on the Markovian assumption, which would imply

1623 that the sequential incorporation of measurement data instead of the batch approach does not
1624 significantly reduce the information content of the data. A further simplifying assumption which can
1625 be made in SDA for the updating step, is the normal distribution of states, parameters and data. The
1626 Markovian and normal assumptions give rise to the Ensemble Kalman Filter (EnKF) (Evensen 1994;
1627 Burgers et al. 1998). EnKF needs much less CPU-time than the MCMC-approach, although also the
1628 full posterior pdf is derived. The sequential nature of the approach is especially suited for real-time
1629 predictions of for example soil moisture evolution. In addition, the framework is flexible for handling
1630 multiple sources of uncertainty. A further advantage is that time-dependent parameters can be
1631 estimated. The particle filter is another SDA method and does not rely on the Gaussian assumption
1632 (Arulampalam et al. 2002). However, the approximation of the posterior pdf with the particle filter
1633 requires a large number of model evaluations and is not as efficient as the EnKF (van Leeuwen 2009).

1634
1635 SDA has been the method of choice for model-data fusion in land surface modeling for more than a
1636 decade, (e.g., Reichle et al. 2002), and more recently also for groundwater modeling (Chen and Zhang
1637 2006). In land surface modeling, this involves updating of soil moisture contents with remote sensing
1638 information, (e.g., Dunne et al. 2007), or in situ measurements (e.g., De Lannoy et al. 2007), and
1639 updating of soil carbon pools in biogeochemistry models, (e.g., Zhou et al. 2013). Soil parameters are
1640 in general not updated in those applications. In the following, we focus on parameter estimation with
1641 SDA for soil hydrological models, which is a less studied subject. Early applications of SDA in soil
1642 hydrology are the 1D synthetic experiments with the assimilation of soil moisture data by Montzka et
1643 al. (2011) with the particle filter and Wu and Margulis (2011) with EnKF. They updated both states
1644 and soil hydraulic parameters of the van Genuchten model. Montzka et al. (2013) estimated also time-
1645 dependent variables of a radiative transfer model with the particle filter and applied the filter on a site
1646 in Colorado, USA. Wu and Margulis (2013) extended their framework for the assimilation of electrical
1647 conductivity data and applied the filter to data at site in California, USA. Although these works
1648 showed promising results, other 1D studies pointed to the limitations of EnKF. Erdal et al. (2014)
1649 pointed out that a wrong conceptual model of the vertical distribution of soil horizons affects soil
1650 hydraulic parameter estimation and they suggested the inclusion of an additional bias term to improve
1651 the filter performance. Erdal et al. (2015) stressed that especially under dry conditions the pdf of
1652 pressure is highly skewed and EnKF unstable. They showed that a normal score transformation (Zhou
1653 et al. 2011) strongly improved filter performance. Song et al. (2014) estimated 2D spatially distributed
1654 saturated hydraulic conductivities of the unsaturated zone with an iterative variant of EnKF. However,
1655 their work made various simplifications, like perfect knowledge of the other soil hydraulic parameters
1656 and a constant rainfall rate. Integrated hydrological models also model flow in the unsaturated zone
1657 with the 3D Richards equation. First efforts are being made to estimate model parameters of integrated
1658 models with SDA. Shi et al. (2014) estimated several soil hydraulic parameters of such an integrated
1659 model, assuming a spatial homogeneous distribution. They used multivariate data assimilation with

1660 EnKF. Pasetto et al. (2015) estimated 3D spatially distributed saturated hydraulic conductivities for
1661 the unsaturated zone using the integrated hydrological model CATHY (Paniconi and Wood 1993),
1662 assuming perfect knowledge on the other soil hydraulic parameters. (Kurtz et al. 2015) developed a
1663 data assimilation framework in combination with the integrated terrestrial system model TSMP
1664 (Shrestha et al. 2014) and showed in a synthetic test the feasibility to estimate 3D spatially distributed
1665 saturated hydraulic conductivities of the unsaturated zone at a very high spatial resolution (both $2 \times$
1666 10^7 unknown parameters and states). Other data assimilation studies with integrated hydrological
1667 models excluded parameter updating in the unsaturated zone because of instabilities (Rasmussen et al.
1668 2015).

1669 In summary, SDA is of particular interest in soil modeling for real-time applications with the need of
1670 forecasting, for example for real-time optimization of irrigation scheduling. Such applications require
1671 often only state updating. A second important area of application in soil modeling is high-resolution
1672 characterization of 2D and 3D distributed fields of soil hydraulic parameters. However, we are still
1673 facing many challenges. The main obstacle is the joint estimation of distributed fields of saturated
1674 hydraulic conductivity, van Genuchten parameters α and n and porosity. Even if enough conditioning
1675 information would be available, this is highly challenging given the strong non-linearity and non-
1676 Gaussianity of the problem. A further problem for real-world applications is the lack of precise data.
1677 In addition, processes like preferential flow might influence soil moisture redistribution and are
1678 difficult to capture with the standard 3D Richards equation. We expect an increased use of SDA in the
1679 context of soil modeling and the use of variants of EnKF which work better for the described
1680 conditions. It is clear that a successful application requires some simplifications of the estimation
1681 problem, but those should be less stringent than in many current applications. Finally, SDA is also of
1682 interest for estimating time dependent soil and vegetation properties, and provides information helpful
1683 for improving monitoring designs.

1684

1685 **5.4 Bayesian approach for model-data integration**

1686 The usefulness and applicability of soil models for system characterization and science-based
1687 decision making depends in large part on the parameterization which is used to characterize the soil
1688 domain of interest. This includes (among others) the functional form and assumed spatial variability
1689 of (1) the soil water retention and hydraulic conductivity curves, (2) root distribution and uptake, (3)
1690 biomass, nutrients, and biological activity, and (4) preferential flow, as well as the assumed soil
1691 layering, and applied lower and upper boundary conditions. In principle, in-situ observation and
1692 experiments in the laboratory could help determine an appropriate parameterization of the soil
1693 hydraulic parameters, presence of flow paths and layering, biologic activity, nutrient type, amount,
1694 and distribution and root characteristics. Yet, such data often pertain to a relatively small soil volume,
1695 and the parameters derived from this analysis cannot readily be used in soil models that simulate
1696 water, ecological, biological and biogeochemical processes at much larger spatial scales. Because of

1697 the high nonlinearity of the soil hydraulic functions, their application across spatial scales is
1698 inherently problematic. Specifically, the averaging of processes determined from discrete small-scale
1699 samples may not be representative of the key processes of the larger spatial domain. In addition, the
1700 dominant hydrologic flow processes may vary between spatial scales, so that potentially different
1701 models need to be used to describe water flow at the soil pedon, field, or watershed scale, as outlined
1702 in section 4.1.

1703 In recent years, Bayesian inference has found widespread application and use in the modeling of soil
1704 processes to reconcile system models with data, including prediction in space (interpolation),
1705 prediction in time (forecasting), assimilation of observations and deterministic/stochastic model
1706 output, and inference of the model parameters. Bayes theorem states that the posterior probability,
1707 $P(H|D)$, of some hypothesis, H , is proportional to the product of the prior probability, $P(H)$, of this
1708 hypothesis and the likelihood, $L(H|D)$, of the same hypothesis given the observations, D , or

$$1709 \quad P(H|D) = \frac{P(H)L(H|D)}{P(D)} \quad (\text{Equation 4})$$

1710 where the evidence, $P(D)$, acts as a normalization constant of the posterior distribution, so that the
1711 posterior distribution integrates to unity. The evidence (also called marginal likelihood) can be ignored
1712 during inference of the parameters, but is of crucial importance in model selection. The hypothesis, H
1713 often constitutes some numerical model, $F(\mathbf{x})$, which summarizes, in algebraic and differential
1714 equations, state variables and fluxes, all our knowledge of the system of interest, and the unknown
1715 parameter values, \mathbf{x} are generally subject to inference using the data D . Latent variables can be used to
1716 specify explicitly errors in model inputs (boundary conditions). For complex soil models the posterior
1717 distribution, $P(H|D)$ is often high dimensional and analytically intractable, and Monte Carlo simulation
1718 methods are required to approximate the target (Vrugt et al. 2008; Vrugt et al. 2009; Laloy and Vrugt
1719 2012).

1720 The Bayesian approach provides a quantitative framework to treat explicitly all sources of
1721 uncertainty, including model input (boundary conditions), model parameter, calibration data, and
1722 model structural (epistemic) errors. This latter error summarizes the effects of (amongst others)
1723 incomplete knowledge of soil processes and system heterogeneities. Practical experience suggests that
1724 model input and model structural errors are most difficult to describe accurately. These two sources of
1725 error do not necessarily have any inherent probabilistic properties that can be easily exploited in the
1726 construction of a likelihood (objective) function. While we can assume an (stochastic or
1727 deterministic) error model for the model input (forcing data) errors, this will be purely for the sake of
1728 mathematical convenience (Gupta et al. 1998). Consequently, it is very difficult to decompose the
1729 residual error between model simulations (predictions) and data into its constituent sources,
1730 particularly in cases common to complex systems where the model is nonlinear and different sources
1731 of error interact nonlinearly to produce the measured deviation (Vrugt et al. 2005; Beven 2006). One
1732 key challenge is therefore to improve our understanding of measurement data errors at different
1733 temporal and spatial scales. This would improve considerably Bayesian inference of soil models as

1734 prerequisite for advancing process understanding. Another key challenge is to improve model
1735 calibration and evaluation methods so that they are powerful enough to diagnose, detect, and resolve
1736 model structural errors. This is key to improving our process knowledge, and thus a prerequisite for
1737 scientific discovery and learning.

1738
1739 In recent years, much progress has been made in the development of process-based model evaluation
1740 methods that much better extract information from the available data (Gupta et al. 2008; Vrugt and
1741 Sadegh 2013). These methods have been developed in the surface hydrologic literature and recognize
1742 that the very construction of the likelihood (objective) function, as a summary variable of the (usually
1743 averaged) properties of the error residuals, dilutes and mixes the available information into an index
1744 having little remaining correspondence to specific behaviors of the system. This inspired Vrugt and
1745 Sadegh (2013) to advocate a likelihood-free diagnostics approach to model-data synthesis. This
1746 approach, also referred to as approximate Bayesian computation, uses summary metrics of the
1747 original data, rather than the data, \mathbf{D} itself. By designing each metric to be sensitive only to one
1748 component of the model, any mismatch between the simulated and observed summary metrics can be
1749 directly linked to a particular process in the model. A step back to simpler boundary conditions and
1750 system heterogeneities that allow an analytical solution or analysis of the model may be a strategy to
1751 derive these summary metrics so that a large step forward can be taken when analyzing numerical
1752 model output with appropriate metrics. An alternative strategy could be to analyze the model outputs
1753 using coherence spectra, wavelet analyses and other decomposition methods.

1754 Thus as community we face a large number of challenges, including (1) to improve the description of
1755 measurement data error and uncertainty at different spatial and temporal scales. This would help us to
1756 much better constrain the model input data, and consequently help understand whether a model is fit
1757 for purpose (input uncertainty explains model deviations from data) or whether structural
1758 improvements are warranted (deviation from data cannot be explained by errors in boundary
1759 conditions), (2) to adapt the use of process-based model evaluation procedures. These methods much
1760 better convey which components (equations) of the model are supported by experimental data, and
1761 which components should be refined, and (3) to define summary metrics of the model output that are
1762 sensitive only to one particular equation in the model. Of course, much additional work is also
1763 required on how to best represent soil heterogeneity in our numerical models, and how to incorporate
1764 and parameterize processes such as preferential flow. This is a prerequisite to improve our
1765 understanding of soil processes.

1766 **6 Modern sources of spatial and temporal data for soil modeling**

1767 As soil models becomes increasingly complex and address spatial scales larger than the field scale,
1768 the input requirements are becoming more and more demanding. In this section, we present existing
1769 and new measurement technologies that offer the possibility to provide model input data to meet the

1770 before mentioned needs. These include remote sensing technology, proximal data sensing methods
1771 combined with geographical databases of soil properties, pedotransfer functions to derive unknown
1772 model parameters from easily available soil properties and isotope technologies that allow a better
1773 process identification and validation of water and matter fluxes in soil models.

1774

1775 **6.1** Informing soil models using remote sensing

1776 In contrast to proximal sensing (see section 6.2), remote sensing typically is the observation of an
1777 object from a larger distance by using platforms such as towers, aircraft, or satellites. Remote sensing
1778 appears to be an important and promising milestone in soil science (Ben-Dor et al. 2009) and offers
1779 possibilities for extending existing soil-survey data sets also used for larger scales and higher coverage
1780 (Mulder et al. 2011). For the identification of field-to-regional-scale spatial patterns in soil
1781 characteristics, sensors in most cases operate in the visible (VIS, 400–750 nm), near-infrared (NIR,
1782 750–1400 nm), short-wave infrared (SWIR, 1400–3000 nm), mid-wave infrared (MWIR, 3000–6000
1783 nm), thermal infrared (TIR, 6000–15000 nm), and microwave (MW, 1 mm–1 m) regions of the
1784 electromagnetic spectrum. Whereas MW signals are able to penetrate a vegetation cover, VIS-NIR-
1785 SWIR-MWIR sensors require bare soil or low vegetation to record soil information. Several review
1786 papers with different foci have been published in this respect (see, e.g., Ben-Dor 2002; Schmutge et
1787 al. 2002; Metternicht and Zinck 2003; Courault et al. 2005; Tang et al. 2009; Ge et al. 2011; Montzka
1788 et al. 2012; Shi et al. 2012; Schimel et al. 2015).

1789 Soil models can be informed by remote sensing in different ways. For example, these can include
1790 providing information about model forcings, model parameters, state variables, and fluxes, as well as
1791 by indirect methods using the plants as “sensors” of root zone properties (Wilson 2009). In the
1792 following, we discuss these main measurement applications separately, knowing that their role of
1793 informing a soil model can change depending on the model characteristics.

1794

1795 *Model forcings*

1796 Models can benefit from remotely sensed model-driving forces when *in situ* measurements are not
1797 available or do not capture the spatial heterogeneity. Typically, soil models are driven by
1798 meteorological measurements, which are operationally recorded by remote sensing (Sheffield et al.
1799 2006), such as for weather-forecast applications. One example is precipitation, measured by
1800 microwave sensors on tower-based and space borne platforms. The Global Precipitation Mission
1801 (GPM) is an international network of satellites that provide global observations of rain and snow,
1802 building upon its core satellite, Tropical Rainfall Measuring Mission (TRMM) (Huffman et al. 2007).
1803 Similarly, networks of local weather-radar systems are combined to generate area-wide precipitation
1804 maps in high spatial and temporal resolution (Krajewski 2010). Another system measures land-surface
1805 temperature, retrieved operationally by TIR sensors such as the Moderate Resolution Imaging

1806 Spectroradiometer (MODIS) or the Spinning Enhanced Visible and Infrared Imager (SEVIRI) via a
1807 generalized split-window technique (Tomlinson et al. 2011).

1808

1809 *Model parameters*

1810 Digital elevation models (DEMs) are among the first remotely sensed data sources to predict soil
1811 characteristics. By simple landform attributes such as elevation, slope, and aspect, in combination with
1812 geostatistical techniques, more information about a catena such as topsoil gravel content, soil depth
1813 (Odeh et al. 1994), clay content (Greve et al. 2012), erosion (Lee and Liu 2001; Vrieling 2006), see
1814 also section 2.2.2), or even soil pH (Castrignano et al. 2011) can be predicted. However, the
1815 acquisition of DEMs, typically by Light Detection and Ranging (LIDAR, Liu 2008), Synthetic
1816 Aperture Radar (SAR, e.g., Gruber et al. 2012), or stereoscopic optical imagery (Fujisada et al. 2005)
1817 is not straightforward because raw data can contain return signals from human-made objects or
1818 vegetation rather than bare earth targets. Nonetheless, a large variety of high-accuracy DEMs are
1819 available from local to global scale. Ground-based and near-ground based (e.g., UAV-mounted)
1820 LIDAR and Structure from motion (SfM) techniques are providing proximal tools for high resolution
1821 mapping of micro-topography and vegetation.

1822

1823 Passive optical sensors operating from VIS to NIR bands typically are designed as multichannel
1824 detectors either with a few broad bands (multispectral) or with more than one hundred narrow bands
1825 (hyperspectral). A hyperspectral imaging system, also known as an *imaging spectrometer*, is better
1826 able to represent the spectral response of a target soil surface and can provide valuable information
1827 about soil properties; already a few examples for operational application in agricultural management
1828 such as precision agriculture exist (Ge et al. 2011). Specific absorption features—around 550 nm for
1829 iron oxide (Rossel and Behrens 2010) around 1730 nm for organic carbon (Ben-Dor et al. 1997) or
1830 around 2206 nm for clay (Lagacherie et al. 2012) correlate well with *in situ* measurements of soil
1831 properties (Ben-Dor et al. 2009; Bayer et al. 2012; Babaeian et al. 2015).

1832 Other studies do not directly provide a prediction of a soil property but rather, valuable information
1833 via a spectral index. For example, Galvao et al. (2008) used the absorption band-depth values at 2210
1834 nm (kaolinite) and 2260 nm (gibbsite) to develop a spectral-based approach to describe the
1835 silica/aluminum ratio as a weathering index. Moreover, regression analyses, including multiple
1836 regression analysis and partial least-squares regression, are the most popular data-analysis techniques
1837 for relating soil properties to reflectance records (Ge et al. 2011; Gomez et al. 2012). Further soil
1838 properties estimated by multi- and hyperspectral remote sensing are calcium carbonate content
1839 (Lagacherie et al. 2008), salinity (Melendez-Pastor et al. 2010; Ghosh et al. 2012), and texture (Casa
1840 et al. 2013). The enhanced combination of soil spectral libraries (Brown 2007), and hyperspectral
1841 remote sensing may in the future lead to improved maps of soil properties and may be able to monitor
1842 and automate updates of changes in soil properties.

1843

1844 In some soil models, few of these observed properties can be used directly as parameters.
1845 Implementation in pedotransfer functions (PTFs) is an alternative approach to informing soil models
1846 by these remote sensing–derived soil characteristics (see section 6.3).

1847

1848 *State variables*

1849 Microwave (MW) sensors such as radars (active) or radiometers (passive) are able to detect variables
1850 valid for upper soil layers such as moisture (Njoku and Entekhabi 1996; Kornelsen and Coulibaly
1851 2013); roughness (Davidson 1998; Panciera et al. 2009), and salinity (Komarov et al. 2002). The
1852 challenge is to disentangle the impacts of these variables on the MW signal, to retrieve the variables
1853 separately. Typically, salinity can be neglected for most soils, but differentiating moisture from the
1854 altering roughness effects is a remaining challenge (Shi et al. 1997; Verhoest et al. 2008).

1855

1856 One interesting approach to detect variables is the combination of measurements obtained at different
1857 incidence angles (Srivastava et al. 2003) or different frequencies, i.e, with different sensitivity to soil
1858 moisture and soil surface roughness. Use of time-lapse MW observations and coupled-inversion or
1859 data-assimilation techniques with hydrological soil models (see also section 5) also proved to be one
1860 of the most potent venues for soil-hydraulic-property estimation from local to regional scales
1861 (Mohanty 2013; Dimitrov et al. 2014; Jonard et al. 2015). Other approaches make use of the spatio-
1862 temporal variability of surface soil moisture to indirectly estimate hydraulic properties (van Genuchten
1863 1980), not only for the top soil, but also for the root or vadose zone (Montzka et al. 2011; Kumar et al.
1864 2012).

1865

1866 *Fluxes*

1867 Energy-balance and mass-conservation rules should be considered when informing soil models by
1868 remotely sensed flux measurements in the soil-plant–atmosphere continuum. Energy-balance
1869 components, such as latent and sensible heat, or water-balance components, such as actual
1870 evapotranspiration, can be retrieved based on surface-characteristic parameters (e.g., leaf area index,
1871 land surface temperature, surface albedo) obtained by a combination of VIS to TIR data (see also
1872 section 6.1) (Bastiaanssen et al. 1998; Mu et al. 2011).

1873

1874 *Vegetation canopy properties providing information about soil status*

1875 Spatial heterogeneity of subsurface properties such as soil moisture, soil texture, and soil structure, as
1876 well as biochemical properties (e.g., organic carbon, nutrient status, pH) in combination with climatic
1877 conditions, are known to affect plant health (De Benedetto et al. 2013). Inversely, indirect methods
1878 using the plants as “sensors” of root-zone properties (Wilson 2009) can therefore be used to inform
1879 soil models. Rudolph (2014) presented the link between crop-status patterns in large-scale

1880 multispectral satellite imagery with multi-receiver electromagnetic induction (EMI) hydrogeophysical
1881 data. Moreover, Vereecken et al. (2012) analyzed the potential of MW remote sensing to identify
1882 water-stress-related phenomena in vegetation canopies, which can be related to subsurface properties.

1883
1884 In general, several sensors and methods still make use of ground-based manual measurements using
1885 remotely sensed parameter maps for regionalization and pattern recognition (e.g., Lagacherie et al.
1886 2012) but the number of solely air- and space borne applications for spatial and temporal soil-property
1887 estimation is limited. Instead of regression analyses to upscale from point to regional scale, physical
1888 models describing radiative transfer processes need to be developed. Future technical improvements
1889 and new sensor developments will foster this field of research.

1890

1891 **6.2 Proximal soil sensing, geographical databases of soil properties for soil-process modeling**

1892 *Proximal soil sensing*

1893 Modeling soil processes at field, catchment, and larger extents requires access to high resolution and
1894 spatially distributed information on soil properties. Proximal soil sensing (PSS) has the potential to
1895 benefit soil process modeling by increasing the cost effectiveness and rapidity of soil characterization
1896 and monitoring. PSS is the acquisition of information about the object or feature of interest using
1897 equipment either in direct physical contact with the *in situ* object or very close to it. "Very close"
1898 means within a few meters, usually closer. In relation to soil, proximal sensing is both a very old and
1899 a relatively new discipline; old in that the earliest soil scientists relied almost entirely on visual
1900 observations of soils in the field, and new in that recent technologies have greatly expanded and
1901 improved our ability to acquire information from the soil. Application of PSS will lead to easier
1902 process-model conceptualization, parametrization, initialization, and evaluation, and will reduce the
1903 time and effort required in the "transaction costs" that surround soil modeling. Examples of PSS
1904 technology include Portable X-ray fluorescence (PXRF), (Zhu et al. 2011); apparent electrical
1905 conductivity measurements using electrical resistivity tomography (ERT), (Samouëlian et al. 2005;
1906 Koestel et al. 2008); electromagnetic induction (EMI), (Weller et al. 2007; Saey et al. 2009; Rudolph
1907 2014), spectral-induced polarization (SIP), (Slater et al. 2006); ground-penetrating radar (GPR),
1908 (Huisman 2003; Lambot et al. 2010), and gamma-ray spectroscopy (Rossel and McBratney 1998;
1909 Rawlins et al. 2007); field near-infrared (NIR) spectroscopy (Rossel and McBratney 1998; Rodionov
1910 et al. 2014) and ion-sensitive field-effect transistors (Lobsey et al. 2010).

1911
1912 Adamchuk and Rossel (2010) and Rossel et al. (2011) provide a review of PSS technologies and their
1913 applications. Recent developments in sensor fusion examine the possibility of linking multiple sensors
1914 with common calibration and data-analysis approaches (Kweon 2012; Mahmood et al. 2012), which
1915 would allow researchers to capture all of the data required to set up or validate a soil process model
1916 with one set of readings. A wide, constantly expanding range of soil parameters can be estimated

1917 using PSS, including particle-size fractions (Buchanan et al. 2012), soil moisture, root density and
1918 available water-holding capacity (Hedley et al. 2010), clay content (Waiser et al. 2007), organic
1919 carbon (Viscarra Rossel and McBratney 2003; Stevens et al. 2013), organic carbon fractions like
1920 black carbon and particulate organic matter (Bornemann et al. 2008; Bornemann et al. 2010), and
1921 nutrients (Wu et al. 2014a). In addition to measurement of parameters, the evaluation of soil processes
1922 may also be amenable to PSS techniques (Dematte and Terra 2014). Soil parameters estimated from
1923 proximal soil sensors can be an input to a soil inference system, where properties related to transfer of
1924 water, heat, gas, or solute can be estimated (McBratney et al. 2006). This procedure would have
1925 obvious benefits for soil process modeling because it would directly capture detailed information
1926 about what is being modeled.

1927
1928 The integration of PSS within soil mapping, monitoring, and modeling (SM3) is an active field
1929 closely linked to the European Soil Thematic Strategy; notable examples of efforts in this area are
1930 DIGISOIL (Grandjean et al. 2010) and iSOIL (Werban et al. 2010). Several challenges exist,
1931 including removal or accounting for the effects of moisture and soil structure from sensor readings
1932 obtained in the field. (Minasny et al. 2011), for example, provide a solution for soil moisture.
1933 (Rodionov et al. 2014) expanded the solution to handling moisture and soil surface roughness for the
1934 sensing of soil organic C. The use of spectral libraries derived from dried ground samples to calibrate
1935 models that then use field-based spectra is making good progress (Ge et al. 2014). Sampling and
1936 calibration is another growth area for PSS; these are often considered separately, when in fact they are
1937 closely related. The sampling strategy used in the field or laboratory strongly impacts data availability
1938 for calibration purposes, and the calibration method employed often places specific requirements on
1939 the quantity, variability, and type of data to be used. The interaction of sampling and calibration has
1940 been studied in the iSOIL project (Nüsch et al. 2010) and in other research (Dematte et al. 2006;
1941 Brown 2007; Sankey et al. 2008).

1942
1943 PSS techniques often produce big data that can require complex and customized analysis, whereas the
1944 priority in terms of process modeling will be to increase data availability and eliminate much of the
1945 effort required in interpreting the sensor data. Portable infrared instruments capture ultraspectral (data
1946 across thousands of wavelengths), reducing the number of data without losing useful information
1947 makes for more-accessible analysis (Viscarra-Rossel and Behrens 2010) or spectral response-based
1948 PSS. In addition methods of applying three-channel RGB data will open up the possibility of using
1949 digital cameras and mobile phones for PSS (Viscarra-Rossel 2009; Aitkenhead et al. 2014).
1950 Measurement of soil-horizon characteristics, including depth of impermeable layers, is also possible
1951 with digital imagery (Islam et al. 2014). Based on hyperspectral camera records it has also been
1952 possible to provide maps of elemental concentrations for C, N, Al, Fe and Mn for each mineral soil
1953 horizon. VIS-NIR spectroscopy also allows differentiation of organic surface layers and the

1954 assessment of their qualitative OM properties with a high spatial resolution (Steffens and Buddenbaum
1955 2013; Steffens et al. 2014). Digital soil morphometrics (Hartemink and Minasny 2014) is a subfield of
1956 PSS in which the spatial variation of sensor reading within the profile is used to enhance information
1957 about the soil vertical dimension. In addition to rapid and relatively inexpensive estimates of soil
1958 properties and processes, PSS can also rapidly provide information about the short-scale spatial
1959 heterogeneity of soils, which is of particular use in modeling soils (Kruger et al. 2013). PSS can also
1960 play a gap-filling role in increasing the level of spatial detail available from existing monitoring
1961 networks (Ochsner et al. 2013; Schirrmann et al. 2013), which will be important for soil process
1962 modeling that incorporates spatial processes.

1963
1964 As shown above, a number of areas of development exist that will improve the potential of PSS for
1965 soil process modeling. To realize this potential, the following objectives must be achieved: (1)
1966 Automated interpretation of sensor data, using standardized calibration data sets and generally
1967 applicable calibration techniques, (2) Elimination of field- or sensor-specific effects on sensor data, to
1968 allow calibration from a wide range of available data and sensor types, (3) Multisensor or
1969 multiparameter readings to allow "snapshots" of all soil parameters of interest across the whole
1970 profile, and (4) Development of methods to allow cheap, mass-produced sensor devices (e.g., mobile-
1971 phone cameras) to be used in crowd-sourced information acquisition

1972
1973 For each of the above objectives, significant progress has been made in recent years and will
1974 continue. In its current state, PSS can and does already benefit soil process modeling, and it is
1975 anticipated that future developments will increase the rapidity and ease with which data required for
1976 soil process model development, initialization, and validation can be acquired. The IUSS Working
1977 Group on Proximal Soil Sensing (<http://www.proximalsoilsensing.org/>) provides information and
1978 links to events and resources of relevance and is the forum in which developments in this area are
1979 discussed and disseminated.

1980
1981 *Soil databases*
1982 Soil information is the key to evaluating ecosystem services like water regulation, water retention,
1983 nutrient regulation, waste treatment, and food production (de Groot et al. 2002). With the help of
1984 computer-based geographic systems, many groups have generated geographical databases to organize
1985 and harmonize the huge amount of soil information generated during the last century. Soil databases
1986 enable the application of soil models at regional to global extents. Many national agencies around the
1987 world have organized their soil surveys in databases include SSURGO (Soil Survey Staff 1995), with
1988 soil information mainly from the USA; the Australian Soil Resource Information System (Johnston et
1989 al. 2003); the National Soil Inventory of Scotland (Lilly et al. 2010); and the Soil-Geographic
1990 Database of Russia (Shoba et al. 2010).

1991
1992 Besides national databases, global efforts are underway to compile databases from different countries
1993 or generate new soil information through the implementation of multinational projects. These include
1994 the Soil and Terrain Database (SOTER; van Engelen and Ting-Tiang 1995), at scale 1:5000000,
1995 containing digitized map units and their attributes; the World Inventory of Soil Emission Potentials,
1996 WISE, (Batjes 2009), from 149 countries; the Harmonized World Soil Database (Nachtergaele et al.
1997 2008) and the Land Use and Cover Area Frame Survey from the European Union
1998 (<http://eusoiils.jrc.ec.europa.eu/projects/Lucas/>)(Toth et al. 2013). All these efforts manifest the need to
1999 organize and distribute soil information within the soil scientific community, and to make it available
2000 for interdisciplinary studies.

2001
2002 In 2006, the GlobalSoilMap, a global consortium that aims to create a digital map of the world's key
2003 soil properties (Arrouays et al. 2014), was established. This global effort will provide access to the
2004 best available map of soil properties across the globe at a resolution of 3 arc sec (~100 m) along with
2005 its 90% confidence of prediction, in a consistent format at the depth ranges of 0–5, 5–15, 15–30, 30–
2006 60, 60–100, and 100–200 cm. The methods used for GlobalSoilMap consider the nature, availability,
2007 and density of existing soil data. For example, an initial approach to mapping soil carbon in the
2008 United States is based on a 1:250,000 soil map from the USDA-NRCS, in which the soil polygons
2009 were converted to raster estimates of organic carbon content for the six depth intervals of the
2010 GlobalSoilMap specifications (Odgers et al. 2012). Thus far, the most comprehensive example of soil
2011 property maps made according to GlobalSoilMap specifications is the Australian Soil and Landscape
2012 Grid (<http://www.clw.csiro.au/aclep/soilandlandscapegrid/>, (Grundy et al. 2015). Other examples
2013 include the mapping of soil texture and organic carbon in Denmark (Adhikari et al. 2014). Another
2014 initiative is the Soilgrids by ISRIC ((<http://soilgrids1km.isric.org/>) which used the GlobalSoilMap
2015 specification except that the spatial resolution is 1-km (Hengl et al. 2014).

2016
2017 The aforementioned databases in combination with pedotransfer functions (section 6.3) have been
2018 successfully used to evaluate the impact of agricultural expansion (Maeda et al. 2010), global
2019 agricultural suitability (Zabel et al. 2014), nutrient stoichiometry under native vegetation groups (Bui
2020 and Henderson 2013), and soil erodibility estimates (Panagos et al. 2012). In addition, global soil
2021 information should better inform global climate models (Wilson and Henderson-Sellers 1985),
2022 hydrology models (Weiland et al. 2010), and road planning (Laurance and Balmford 2013).

2023 2024 **6.3** Informing soil models using pedotransfer functions

2025 Pedotransfer functions (PTFs), empirical relationships between parameters of soil models and more
2026 easily obtainable data on soil properties, have become an indispensable tool in modeling soil
2027 processes. As alternative methods to direct measurements, they bridge the data we have and data we

2028 need by using soil survey and monitoring data to estimate parameters of soil models. PTFs are
2029 extensively used in soil models addressing the most pressing environmental issues such as carbon
2030 sequestration and gas emission; climate change and extreme events, including floods and droughts;
2031 and soil ecological services and sustainability (e.g., Decharme et al. 2011; Piedallu et al. 2011;
2032 Wiesmeier et al. 2012). Currently, PTFs are mostly applied to estimating soil water retention curve
2033 and soil hydraulic conductivity curve (Vereecken et al. 2010), solute transport parameters (Koestel et
2034 al. 2012), erosion and overland transport (Guber et al. 2014), and adsorption isotherms (Kodesova et
2035 al. 2011). However, the pedotransfer concept can be applied to any soil attribute. In particular, as the
2036 interest in modeling biogeochemical processes increases, development of PTFs for parameters of
2037 those processes will become essential. The process of PTF development is outlined in Figure 7.

2038

2039 Figure 6 HERE

2040 Because the equations to express PTF relationships are essentially unknown, a trend has emerged to
2041 employ machine-learning methodology (e.g., artificial neural networks, support vector machines,
2042 decision trees), which in theory is flexible enough to simulate highly nonlinear dependences hidden in
2043 analyzed data. This methodology, however, comes with the penalty of a large number of coefficients
2044 that are difficult to estimate reliably. Applying a preliminary classification to PTF inputs and PTF
2045 development for each of the resulting groups holds the promise of providing simple, transparent, and
2046 more reliable pedotransfer equations. The existence of PTFs reflects the outcome of some soil
2047 processes; thus, using models of those processes to generate PTFs, or at least physics-based functional
2048 forms for PTFs, is an expected research avenue.

2049

2050 PTFs are evaluated by their accuracy (i.e., errors with the development data set), their reliability (i.e.,
2051 errors with data that have not been used in the PTF development), and their utility (i.e., errors of soil
2052 model where PTF-predicted parameters are used). Depending on the sensitivity of the soil model to
2053 PTF-estimated parameters, various levels of PTF accuracy and/or reliability may be acceptable in
2054 terms of the PTF utility (Chirico et al. 2010). The multiplicity of models (i.e., presence of several
2055 models producing the same output variables) is a typical feature in the PTF research field. However,
2056 PTF inter-comparisons are lagging behind PTF development, aggravated by the fact that coefficients
2057 of PTF based on machine-learning methods are usually not reported. There is a pressing need to
2058 develop and implement protocols for PTF utility evaluation and inter-comparison.

2059

2060 Estimating the variability of soil-model parameters becomes increasingly important as newer
2061 modeling technologies (e.g., data assimilation, ensemble modeling, and model abstraction) become
2062 progressively more popular (Guber et al. 2006; Pan et al. 2012). The variability of PTFs rely on the
2063 spatio-temporal dynamics of soil variables, which open new sources of PTF inputs stemming from

2064 technology advances such as monitoring networks, remote and proximal sensing, and omics, (e.g.,
2065 Tranter et al. 2008; Jana and Mohanty 2011).

2066

2067 Burgeoning PTF development has so far not filled several persisting regional knowledge gaps.
2068 Remarkably little effort so far has been put into PTF development for saline soils, calcareous and
2069 gypsiferous soils, peat soils, paddy soils, soils with well-expressed shrink-swell behavior, and soils
2070 affected by freeze-thaw cycles. The challenge is to correct this situation in the near future. Soils from
2071 tropical regions are quite often considered as a pseudo-entity for which a single PTF can be applied
2072 (Minasny and Hartemink 2011). This assumption will no longer be valid as more regional data are
2073 accumulated and analyzed. Other advances in regional PTFs will be possible because of the presence
2074 of large databases on region-specific useful PTF inputs such as moisture equivalent (Ottoni et al.
2075 2014), laser diffractometry data (Lamorski et al. 2014), or soil specific surface (Khlosi et al. 2013).
2076 Most transport models in soils—whether water, solutes, gas, or heat—involve parameters that are
2077 scale-dependent. Recently, the need to match the scale of computational grid cells and scale of the
2078 flux parameter PTF estimation was shown (Pachepsky et al. 2014). Knowledge about scale effect on
2079 parameters is rapidly expanding for overland flow and transport (Delmas et al. 2012). Including scale
2080 dependencies in PTFs is the grand challenge in improving PTF usability.

2081
2082 Another scale-related challenge is PTF development for coarse-scale soil modeling, such as for land-
2083 use change or climate models. Soil parameters in these models cannot be measured, and the efficiency
2084 of PTFs can be evaluated only in terms of their utility (Gutmann and Small 2007; Shen et al. 2014).
2085 There is an urgent need to determine combinations of pedotransfers and upscaling procedures that can
2086 lead to the derivation of suitable coarse-scale soil-model parameters. Also, the coarse spatial scale
2087 often assumes a coarse temporal support, which requires an understanding of how to include in PTFs
2088 other environmental variables such as weather and management attributes.

2089
2090 Temporal and spatial aspects of PTF development and applications have not received proper attention
2091 (Romano 2004). Because PTF input variables demonstrate dependencies of spatial location and time,
2092 an effort will be made to determine whether PTF-estimated parameters have the same spatial and
2093 temporal correlations as measured ones, and whether regionalization and upscaling of PTF-estimated
2094 and measured soil parameters produce similar results. More efficient use of topography as an essential
2095 spatial covariate is also expected.

2096
2097 PTFs are empirical relationships and their accuracy outside the database used for PTF development is
2098 essentially unknown. Therefore, they should never be considered as an ultimate source of parameters
2099 in soil modeling. Rather, they strive to provide a balance between accuracy and availability. The
2100 primary role of PTF is to assist in modeling for screening and comparative purposes, establish ranges

2101 and/or probability distributions of model parameters, and create realistic synthetic soil data sets and
2102 scenarios. Further exploration is needed before using PTFs as a source of hypotheses on and insights
2103 into relationships between soil processes and soil composition as well as between soil structure and
2104 soil functioning. Developing and improving PTFs will remain the mainstream way of packaging data
2105 and knowledge for applications of soil modeling.

2106

2107 **6.4 Parametrizing models with non-destructive and high resolution water stable isotope data**

2108 Physically-based numerical soil-vegetation-atmosphere transfer models (SVAT) gather state-of-the-
2109 art knowledge on processes involved in the transfer of heat and water within the soil profile, on soil-
2110 plant relations (root water uptake and/or hydraulic redistribution), and on soil- and plant-atmosphere
2111 interactions (radiative transfers and exchange of fluxes of momentum, heat and water vapor, i.e.,
2112 evapotranspiration). They are complex models which require careful calibration of their many
2113 parameters, which can be done by feeding them with high resolution input data, such as the temporal
2114 development of soil water isotopologue profiles.

2115

2116 For decades now, stable isotopologues of water ($^1\text{H}^2\text{H}^{16}\text{O}$ and $^1\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$) have been used in identifying
2117 and quantifying sources and sinks as well as partitioning processes of terrestrial water, and hence are
2118 an invaluable source of information for improving soil-hydrological and SVAT models. Mass
2119 differences of these heavy isotopologues relative to the most abundant water molecule ($^1\text{H}_2^{16}\text{O}$) lead
2120 to thermodynamic and kinetic isotopic effects, causing detectable differences in the isotopic
2121 composition ($\delta^2\text{H}$ and $\delta^{18}\text{O}$) of water in different compartments such as groundwater, surface water,
2122 soil and plant water, and atmospheric water vapor. These differences have been used to study
2123 groundwater recharge, atmospheric moisture circulation, water-balance closure of lakes, and
2124 reconstruction of root water uptake profiles, as well as for evapotranspiration partitioning from the
2125 plot to the global scale, (e.g., Craig 1961; Moreira et al. 1997; Yakir and Sternberg 2000; Gibson
2126 2002; Williams et al. 2004; Nippert et al. 2010; Rothfuss et al. 2010; Wang et al. 2010; Jasechko et al.
2127 2013).

2128 The first analytical description of water isotopologue profiles for an isothermal and saturated soil at
2129 steady state was proposed by Zimmermann et al. (1967), which was later extended to non-saturated
2130 profiles under non-steady-state and non-isothermal conditions (Allison et al. 1983; Barnes and Allison
2131 1983; Barnes and Allison 1984; Barnes and Walker 1989). These analytical formulations link the
2132 shape of the water isotopologue profiles to soil evaporation flux and regime, and to the soil physical
2133 properties associated with both diffusive and convective water transport (such as tortuosity length and
2134 dispersivity). In soils between rain events, the combined action of convective capillary rise of water
2135 depleted in the heavy stable isotopologues with back-diffusion of water enriched in the heavy stable
2136 isotopologues from the evaporation site (i.e., soil surface or evaporation front) downward leads to the
2137 formation of (typically exponential) soil-water stable isotopologue profiles.

2138 More recently, the movement of $^1\text{H}^2\text{H}^{16}\text{O}$ and $^1\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ was implemented in various SVAT models, i.e.,
2139 TOUGHREACT, SiSPAT-Isotope, Soil-Litter iso, and HYDRUS 1D (Singleton et al. 2004; Braud et
2140 al. 2005; Haverd and Cuntz 2010; Rothfuss et al. 2012; Sutanto et al. 2012). In addition to the mass
2141 conservation equation for water, these models solve an equivalent conservation equation for the water
2142 isotopologues $^1\text{H}^2\text{H}^{16}\text{O}$ and $^1\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ and need isotopic initial and boundary conditions. Fluxes of water
2143 isotopologues are considered throughout the entire soil profile, i.e., in both vapor and liquid phases,
2144 and not only in the vapor phase above a so-called evaporation front (the minimal depth where non-
2145 equilibrium gas exchange occurs in the soil (defined as the minimal depth where non-equilibrium gas
2146 exchange occurs in the soil, Rothfuss et al. 2015), or only in the liquid phase below it. In addition, and
2147 contrary to, e.g., the study of Barnes and Walker (1989), these numerical models do not make use of a
2148 similarity variable, proportional to depth and (time) $^{-1/2}$, and do not require particular boundary
2149 conditions for the computation of $^1\text{H}^2\text{H}^{16}\text{O}$ and $^1\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ profiles. In addition to thermodynamic
2150 (equilibrium) isotope effects, which are only temperature-dependent, kinetic isotope effects during
2151 soil evaporation greatly affect the stable isotopic composition of soil water and evaporation and can
2152 be highly variable (Braud et al. 2009). Thus, a better understanding of the implications of these
2153 kinetic effects in addition to the well-characterized equilibrium effects and their implementation in
2154 SVAT models are required for improving the use of $^1\text{H}^2\text{H}^{16}\text{O}$ and $^1\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$ as tracers of soil-water
2155 processes. An important challenge is to provide those models with high-resolution isotope data, both
2156 in space and time. Moreover, parallel to field studies, effort should be made to design specific
2157 experiments under controlled conditions, allowing underlying hypotheses of the abovementioned
2158 isotope-enabled SVAT models to be tested. Using isotope data obtained from these controlled
2159 experiments will improve the characterization of evaporation processes within the soil profile and
2160 ameliorate the parametrization of the respective isotope modules.

2161 Soil-water $\delta^2\text{H}$ and $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ typically have been measured by destructive sampling, followed by
2162 cryogenic soil-water extraction (e.g., Araguás-Araguás et al. 1995) and offline analysis with isotope-
2163 ratio mass spectrometers. Although this time-consuming and labor-intensive procedure provides high-
2164 quality data, it has only poor temporal and spatial resolution. As a consequence, measurements of the
2165 isotopic composition of evaporation, inferred from that of soil water at the evaporative site in the soil,
2166 are still sparse, but crucial to constraining transpiration over evapotranspiration ratios, (e.g., Dubbert
2167 et al. 2013; Hu et al. 2014). Another challenge is therefore to develop new methodologies toward
2168 monitoring soil-water $\delta^2\text{H}$ and $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ online with high resolution and in a non-destructive manner. The
2169 first successful attempt was made using microporous polypropylene tubing combined with laser-
2170 based infrared spectrometers (Rothfuss et al. 2013; Volkmann and Weiler 2014; Rothfuss et al. 2015).
2171 These methodologies have also been applied to both laboratory and field experiments and compared
2172 with traditional methods (e.g., cryogenic distillation) for determining soil-water $\delta^2\text{H}$ and $\delta^{18}\text{O}$
2173 signatures (Gaj et al. 2015; Gangi et al. 2015). Another exciting challenge of the coming years is to
2174 determine plant-root water-uptake profiles via online and non-destructive determination of soil-water

2175 $\delta^2\text{H}$ and $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ profiles, using microporous tubing or membrane-based setups. These high resolution
2176 non-destructive isotope data will drastically improve the basis for constraining the above mentioned
2177 SVATs through, e.g., inverse modeling and within the framework of specific (controlled conditions)
2178 experiments.

2179 **7 Toward a soil modeling platform**

2180 Since the advent of computer technologies in the 1980's, we have seen an unprecedented
2181 development of mathematical models that are able to simulate soil processes at an ever increasing
2182 complexity and at scales ranging from the pore to continents. Many of these efforts have been
2183 undertaken by specific soil science disciplines or communities focusing on specific processes and
2184 scales leading to a diverse landscape of soil models. In this section we will discuss recent
2185 developments that aim at better integrating and improving exchange of knowledge such as the
2186 establishment of a virtual soil modeling platform, the development of technologies to couple models,
2187 the establishment of benchmark initiatives and soil modeling inter-comparison studies. Finally, the
2188 soil modeling community should reach out to other communities that explicitly deal with soil either as
2189 an environmental compartment controlling key ecological, climatic and hydrological processes or as
2190 the substrate for producing crops and biomass. A recent initiative, the International Soil Modeling
2191 Consortium (ISMC; <https://soil-modeling.org/>), has been established as a community effort to address
2192 the current challenges of soil modeling.

2193

2194 **7.1 Virtual soil platform**

2195 In the environmental and soil science communities, the need for coupling models and the associated
2196 knowledge has only emerged recently. The development of a coupling tool or modeling platform is
2197 mainly driven by the necessity to create models that consider multiple processes and that take into
2198 account feedbacks between these processes. Soil models often focus on specific processes,
2199 compartments, and scales, and they are often developed for specific applications. The development of
2200 a modeling platform may constitute an efficient and rapid way, not only to address emerging
2201 challenges such as predicting soil functions and soil evolution under global change, but also to share
2202 our vision on soil functioning at different scales and to strengthen collaboration among soil scientists,
2203 soil modelers, and the Earth-system research community. Such a modeling platform goes beyond the
2204 coupling tools that have already been proposed, including OMS3 (David et al. 2013), CSDMS
2205 framework (Peckham et al. 2013), and the Open MI project developed within the framework of the
2206 European Community (<http://www.openmi.org/> 2011). We should expect a modeling platform that is
2207 more ambitious than the coupling of existing numerical codes and one that shares underlying
2208 principles and knowledge. We need to develop complex models that enable us with tools that bring
2209 responses to current issues on soil functioning and soil evolution within the framework of global

2210 change. We also need to share in a common framework our visions of soil functioning at various
2211 scales—to both strengthen our collaborations and to make them visible to other communities working
2212 on environmental issues.

2213

2214 We therefore propose to develop a virtual soil platform (VSP) that serves as a hub for sharing soil
2215 process knowledge, modules (i.e. numerical tools and algorithms simulating a process), and models
2216 (i.e. a logical combination of several modules), and that addresses the issues discussed above. VSP
2217 should enable soil scientists not familiar with model development to develop numerical
2218 representations of soil processes or to build their own models. To make this possible, VSP should
2219 enable an easy exchange of processes, variables, modules, and models between users. VSP should
2220 provide access to tools enabling sensitivity studies, parameter estimation, stochastic analysis and
2221 ensemble runs, data assimilation, visualization of simulation results, and model comparison and
2222 benchmarking (see Section 4.3). In addition, VSP should be linked to soil databases providing
2223 information on soil properties, spatial variability (see Section 5.2), boundary conditions, validation
2224 data sets, and so on. The purpose is to offer a common tool facilitating not only the exchange of
2225 knowledge, the reuse of recognized modules and models and the development of new ones, and the
2226 access to various peripheral tools, but also the exchanges between users.

2227

2228 At present, the VSoil platform (Lafolie et al. 2015) is being developed (<http://www6.inra.fr/vsoil>). It
2229 addresses the issues listed above and may serve as a starting point towards the future development of
2230 the ISMC. More precisely, VSoil offers a means of dealing with *processes*, not just with codes
2231 representing these processes. Processes are clearly defined. This means that all the entities (i.e. states,
2232 parameters, constants and fluxes) that describe processes and all the output Vsoil produces are listed
2233 and visible to anyone using the framework, without having to access the codes of the modules. The
2234 processes and entity lists are open, as new items will be progressively added. VSoil clearly
2235 differentiates between process knowledge, the various mathematical representations of soil processes,
2236 and their numerical implementation, thus favoring the use of the framework by those not familiar with
2237 modeling. By using sets of processes and variables, VSoil automatically ensures that the connections
2238 between processes and modules are checked for compatibility when assembled for constructing a
2239 model. Having a set of uniquely defined entities (i.e. definition and units) on which models can draw
2240 is also essential, given that a reasonable objective is to couple the platform with databases for model
2241 comparison, data assimilation, variables forcing, or parameter estimation. In addition, a well-defined
2242 set of variables is fundamental when collaboration between people from various fields of expertise
2243 (physics, biology, chemistry, and so on) is sought, We view this as a goal for tools dedicated to the
2244 development of complex soil-functioning models. Thus, we suggest that effort be focused on the
2245 sharing of knowledge in addition to all that can be accomplished in sharing and coupling numerical
2246 tools.

2247

2248 VSoil eliminates all the portability (compilation, version, and so on) problems that arise when
2249 exchanging computational tools. In addition, given that the platform manipulates processes and
2250 variables, and that modules are linked to a process, all information about a module or model is readily
2251 visible and not hidden somewhere in the code. In particular, the lists of exchanged variables are
2252 explicitly displayed as well as the list of parameters for a module. Using a platform based on processes
2253 and modules also eases collaboration between coworkers since agreement on concepts and variables
2254 can first be reached. Numerical code development can be carried out after this stage; this phase can be
2255 split into several tasks that can be, if needed, realized simultaneously in different places, without
2256 worrying about compatibility or portability. Hence, working within a common framework would
2257 intensify communications and exchanges, speed up model development, promote the reuse of well-
2258 recognized tools, and offer visibility to models developed by the soil science community.

2259

2260 **7.2** Model coupling approaches

2261 In complex systems such as soils, mathematical models generally describe several distinct but
2262 simultaneously occurring processes. The full mathematical model can often be split into several
2263 distinct modules; a solution of the full model is achieved by operator splitting techniques. Or, in a
2264 bottom-up view, several models describing distinct processes can be coupled together to characterize a
2265 more complex system. In this way, additional processes can be integrated as new modules if required
2266 for a specific scientific problem. This approach also allows an exchange of modules, which enables the
2267 user to analyze the impact of different modeling approaches.

2268

2269 Coupling methods include (1) light coupling that is based on shared input/output files, (2) external
2270 approaches with a central coupler, or (3) full coupling, using integrated classes or subroutines. The
2271 advantage of the light-coupling approach is that models are independent executables and only need to
2272 share the same format for the input/output files. One example of this approach is the coupling of
2273 SOILCO₂ and RothC (Herbst et al. 2008b) where the CO₂ production rate required by SOILCO₂ is
2274 computed by the RothC model. Another example is the coupling of the dynamic root architectural
2275 model RootBox with the model for water flow in soil and root system, R-SWMS (Leitner 2014). Here,
2276 RootBox computes the geometry of the growing root system used by R-SWMS. The disadvantage is
2277 that it is relatively inefficient compared to other approaches.

2278

2279 A minimally intrusive coupling approach attaches independent models to a central coupler such as
2280 OASIS (<http://www.cerfacs.fr/3-26887-The-OASIS-coupler-ant-its-applications.php>) or MCT
2281 (<http://www.mcs.anl.gov/research/projects/mct/>). Here, each model must include a piece of software
2282 that enables communication with the central coupler; thus, a slight change to the code is necessary.
2283 The coupler establishes the global communication and memory space; it exchanges data in memory

2284 instead of time-consuming I/O procedures. A further advantage of this approach is that it facilitates the
2285 running of models not only individually but also while in ensemble (for data assimilation) or Monte
2286 Carlo mode (for uncertainty analysis), as well as the coupling of further computational tools such as
2287 inversion algorithms for parameter estimation. Examples of this approach are more commonly found
2288 in the earth system community (Warner 2008).

2289

2290 7.3 Benchmarks and soil model inter-comparisons

2291 Model verification, benchmarking, and inter-comparisons are activities that are intrinsically linked
2292 with the development of complex mathematical models simulating various processes in soils. Because
2293 of the inherent heterogeneity of soil environments, the temporal and spatial variability of boundary
2294 conditions, and the nonlinearity processes and various constitutive functions, general solutions of the
2295 governing mathematical equations are usually achieved using numerical approximations (see Section
2296 3.4). Given the diversity of processes and numerical approaches, scientists and model developers
2297 must verify and test their models or demonstrate their models were independently verified and tested.
2298 Verification of a code should ensure that the equations constituting the mathematical model are
2299 correctly encoded and solved. Verification of a code consists of showing that the results generated by
2300 the model for simpler problems are consistent with available analytical solutions or are the same as, or
2301 similar to, results generated with other numerical codes (model inter-comparisons). The latter
2302 procedure is also called *benchmarking*.

2303

2304 Available analytical solutions are often limited to idealized transport domains, homogeneous and
2305 isotropic media, and uniform initial and constant boundary conditions. The very reason for developing
2306 numerical models is to go beyond the range of available analytical solutions (i.e., to allow irregular
2307 transport domains, heterogeneous and anisotropic media, variable boundary conditions, and nonlinear
2308 processes). Verification in such conditions is often accomplished using model inter-comparisons that
2309 use approximate tests for internal consistency and accuracy, such as mass conservation, global mass-
2310 balance errors, and sensitivity to changes in mesh size and time steps.

2311

2312 In the literature, many model inter-comparison studies have been reported for subsurface flow and
2313 transport models. For example, Scanlon et al. (2002) compared water-balance simulation results from
2314 seven different codes (HELP, HYDRUS-1D, SHAW, SoilCover, SWIM, UNSAT-H, and VS2DTI)
2315 using 3-year water-balance monitoring data from non-vegetated engineered covers (3-m deep) in
2316 warm (Texas) and cold (Idaho) desert regions. Vanderborght et al. (2005) developed and used a set of
2317 analytical benchmarks (of differing complexity) to test numerical models (HYDRUS-1D, MACRO,
2318 MARTHE, SWAP, and WAVE) of flow and transport in soils. Oster et al. (2012) compared the
2319 simulated crop yields grown under production practices and transient conditions (involving pressure
2320 head and osmotic stresses) in the western San Joaquin Valley of California, using the ENVIRO-GRO,

2321 HYDRUS-1D, SALTMED, SWAP, and UNSATCHEM models. Finally, inter-comparisons of results
2322 obtained by PEARL, PELMO, PRZM, and MACRO models for nine (MACRO only for one) FOCUS
2323 scenarios/sites, which collectively represent agriculture (and different climate regions) in the EU, for
2324 the purposes of a Tier 1 EU-level assessment of the leaching potential of active substances were
2325 carried out by the FOCUS group (Focus 2000).

2326 Similar efforts are being carried out in related environmental fields. For example, Hanson et al.
2327 (2004) evaluated 13 models varying in their spatial, mechanistic, and temporal complexity for their
2328 ability to capture intra- and inter-annual components of the water and carbon cycle for an upland, oak-
2329 dominated forest of eastern Tennessee. A set of well-described benchmark problems that can be used
2330 to demonstrate model conformance with norms established by the subsurface science and engineering
2331 community has recently been developed for complex reactive transport numerical models
2332 (CrunchFlow, HP1, MIN3P, PFlotran, and TOUGHREACT) (e.g., Rosenzweig et al. 2013; Steefel et
2333 al. 2015; Xie et al. 2015). Rosenzweig et al. (2013) described the Agricultural Model Inter-
2334 comparison and Improvement Project (AgMIP), which is a major international effort linking the
2335 climate, crop, and economic modeling communities with cutting-edge information technology to
2336 produce improved crop and economic models and the next generation of climate-impact projections
2337 for the agricultural sector. Finally, the WCRP (World Climate Research Programme) Working Group
2338 on Coupled Modeling (<http://www.wcrp-climate.org/wgcm/projects.shtml>) catalogues a large number
2339 of Model Inter-comparison Projects (MIPs) related to various climate-related models.

2340
2341 Similar model inter-comparison studies will undoubtedly continue as advances in measurement
2342 technology, computing technology, and numerical techniques enable the development of models of
2343 ever-increasing levels of sophistication that cannot be readily verified using analytical solutions such
2344 as those developed and/or suggested by Vanderborght et al. (2005). The soil-modeling community
2345 should thus expand on this work by establishing a benchmark and validation platform with
2346 standardized and high-quality data sets that would use common data formats, protocols, and
2347 ontologies and that would be readily available to model developers for further model testing and inter-
2348 comparisons. Ontologies refer to a standardized vocabulary enabling a common understanding of the
2349 exact meaning of different terms (e.g., parameters, variables) used in a science community. Examples
2350 can be found in biology (<http://www.plantontology.org/>) or agriculture (<http://aims.fao.org/vest-registry>). The database could include not only experimental data sets, but also input/output files of
2351 most commonly used soil models applied to these data sets.

2352
2353
2354 **7.4 Linking soil-modeling platforms with climate, ecology, and hydrology**

2355 It is clear that soil plays a vital and pivotal role in environmental responses to climate change and
2356 variability, in ecological vigor and hydrologic extremes, and in the outcomes of models used to
2357 understand the strength and direction of these connections. Many of these models focus on the

2358 supporting processes of soils, particularly related to water cycling (stocks and fluxes of water
2359 into/from the soil profile) and nutrient (C, N, P) cycling, which are closely linked to provisioning
2360 services. The models also simulate regulating services, described by Dominati (2013) as flood
2361 mitigation, filtering of wastewater, and so on. Predictive and hindcast models used across scientific
2362 disciplines can provide substantial insights into ecosystem processes and services, as well as into the
2363 intricate connection among the different pools of natural resources provided by soil.

2364
2365 As described by Sellers et al. (1997), land/atmosphere models have evolved into sophisticated soil-
2366 vegetation-atmosphere systems that provide large-scale transfer of water vapor and carbon. Many
2367 aspects of these climate circulation models connect to surface processes and the uppermost soil
2368 horizons of land. These processes involve understanding soil hydrology, impacts on the soil's energy
2369 balance, and ecological response to climate and climate variability, all of which impact soil
2370 properties, formation, and processes that influence soil formation and degradation. This knowledge
2371 base is being implemented, although slowly and at variable spatial and temporal scales, into
2372 numerical codes that simulate biospheric processes.

2373
2374 We see the effective incorporation of these provisioning and regulating processes into scale-
2375 appropriate models as a significant challenge, and one that could expand soil-modeling applications to
2376 other scientific disciplines. For example, Ochsner et al. (2013) discussed the connection of soil water
2377 storage and content to ecological function, biogeochemistry, and ecological model platforms. This
2378 vital link between soil and ecosystem services is parameterized by lumping many soil processes into
2379 compartments in which reactions occur. The CENTURY/DAYCENT model (Parton et al. 1998)
2380 focuses on carbon and nutrient dynamics, and biosphere models like SiB (Sellers et al. 1986) and
2381 BATS (Dickinson 1986) simulate soil/vegetation/atmosphere transfer (SVAT). These and other
2382 models are now being widely used by the ecological and biogeochemical communities, even though
2383 they generally do not use physically-based governing equations or constitutive relations when
2384 incorporating soil processes; the soil-modeling community can make highly relevant contributions in
2385 this regard. For example, recently Ren et al. (2008) explicitly accounted for vegetation canopy and
2386 physiological control of ET and soil water budgets, improving water budget estimates deeper into the
2387 soil profile rather than matching soil response for the upper (15-cm) soil layer only.

2388
2389 Hydrologic models have for some time generally included soil property parameters, though to varying
2390 degrees of sophistication. Regulating water exchange and movement are critical for accurately
2391 predicting soil (and deeper) recharge, surface-runoff timing and severity, and the ET component of
2392 hydrologic models that ultimately connect to climate or atmospheric codes. One-dimensional
2393 approaches (e.g., HYDRUS-1D; Šimůnek et al. 2008) are used extensively in the agricultural and
2394 environmental fields; these often solve the Richards equation under variably saturated conditions,

2395 using common forms of soil water retention and hydraulic conductivity curves . But these approaches
2396 are less commonly used in landscape-scale approaches for water routing like SWAT (Arnold and
2397 Fohrer 2005; Chen et al. 2011) or HSPF (e.g., Donigian et al. 1995; Brian R. Bicknell 1997), which
2398 rely on a “bucket model” approach and the concept of field capacity and gravitational downward
2399 flow. There remains a divide between physically based models at small spatial and temporal scales,
2400 and lumped parameter models for landscape-type applications. This divide exists because of
2401 computational (lack of sufficient memory or high-performance computer resources), or theoretical
2402 limitations. In the latter case, soil physicists do not deem pore-scale approaches scalable to landscape
2403 and regional scales. Bridging this divide and using manageable soil properties and governing
2404 equations across scales is a significant challenge that needs to be overcome for hydrologic models to
2405 be useful for decision makers.

2406
2407 Increasingly, integrated modeling platforms are collaboratively developed, with model advancements
2408 occurring through specific modules that spread scientific expertise across disciplinary boundaries. An
2409 excellent example is the Community Earth System Model (CESM), maintained by the National
2410 Center for Atmospheric Research (NCAR). Among the principle modules of this global model is the
2411 Community Land Model (CLM), the purpose of which is to improve understanding of natural and
2412 human impacts on vegetation and climate at the regional or global scales. The CLM includes surface
2413 heterogeneities and consists of submodels that represent the hydrologic cycle, biogeochemical
2414 cycling, and ecosystem dynamics (Lawrence et al. 2011), many of which fit neatly into the framework
2415 of Dominati (2013) that connects soil capital to ecosystem processes and services. The CLM is well
2416 suited to study the role of land processes in weather and climate change, and efforts are being devoted
2417 to improve the representation of the role of subsurface processes. For example, the mechanistic
2418 ParFlow model was recently coupled to the CLM (Kollet and Maxwell 2008; Maxwell 2013), for
2419 regional-scale applications, with the ability to simulate complex topographies, geology, and
2420 subsurface heterogeneities of the coupled vadose zone-groundwater system. A challenge for the
2421 modeling community would be to incorporate nutrient cycling, erosion, and other
2422 supporting/degrading processes at spatial and temporal scales that can facilitate the tracking of
2423 ecosystem services through time by changing land use and climate.

2424
2425 For the future, a persistent question is how to effectively incorporate soil properties, taken at the point-
2426 scale, into larger-scale (landscape/watershed) models that simulate ecological/biochemical and
2427 climatological (supporting) processes. The SoilML standard for soil data transfer and storage
2428 (Montanarella et al. 2010) may help in this process. Moreover, whereas advanced soil- modeling
2429 platforms increasingly integrate physical, chemical, and biological processes that couple climate with
2430 hydrology and geochemistry, much of the biological components remain relatively underdeveloped. In
2431 part, much of the microbiological system remains a black box in many soil-based models, especially

2432 as related to microbial kinetics and effects of the dynamics of soil environmental changes (water,
2433 temperature, nutrients) on microbial processes. Though much experimental work is being done to
2434 understand soil fauna (e.g., fungi, worms) and how they alter the soil environment, we are unaware of
2435 soil-modeling work that incorporates soil fauna impacts on the soil-climate system. Finally, because
2436 the main purpose of the IPCC and MDG (Millennium Development Goals) is to provide science for
2437 policy, and given the ongoing interest in incorporating ecosystem services into sustainable land
2438 management decisions, soil-modeling platforms need to be designed to more effectively integrate soil-
2439 modeling output into policy decisions at the regional and global scales.

2440

2441 7.5 Linking soil-modeling platforms with crop and biomass production

2442 Biomass production as an ecosystem service (section 3.2.1) is strongly dependent on soil and crop
2443 interactions. Crop growth and development as well as yield formation are complex processes with
2444 dominant anthropogenic influence. Besides the genetic characteristics of crop species and crop
2445 cultivars, atmospheric conditions, soil properties and soil processes, crop growth depends on the
2446 intensity of crop and soil management. In general, in intensive high-input cropping systems under
2447 irrigation, the farmer is able to optimize management in a way that the growth of a specific crop is
2448 only constrained by radiation and air temperature (potential production conditions). However, in terms
2449 of area, irrigated cropping systems have a low share in the global cropland, and rainfed systems are
2450 predominant, where, depending on climate and soil water retention curve, soil water is a major
2451 constraint. Therefore, among existing dynamic crop models, the majority considers the soils' function
2452 in storing infiltrated water and supplying it to the crop. However, the level of detail of the
2453 representation of this important soil function and its interaction with crop roots and crop water demand
2454 is highly variable. Most crop models use a 1D conceptual approach such as a bucket type approach to
2455 characterize the dynamics of soil water storage, either in a one layer or in a multi-layered soil
2456 (DSSAT; Jones 2003; APSIM; Keating 2003; MONICA; Nendel 2011). Physically based approaches
2457 to simulate soil water fluxes integrated into dynamic crop models are rather scarce (DAISY;
2458 Abrahamsen and Hansen 2000). The SIMPLACE platform offers three different 1D approaches to
2459 simulate soil water dynamics which can be combined with two different approaches of root
2460 development and three different crop water uptake mechanisms (Gaiser et al. 2013). Depending on the
2461 availability of input data, prevailing water management practices and the climatic conditions where the
2462 model is to be applied, simple or more complex combinations can be selected by the user.

2463 In order to be suitable for cropping systems with reduced management intensity, crop models must
2464 consider additional soil processes which are related to crop nutrient supply and in particular to
2465 nitrogen. However, due to the fact that soil nitrogen dynamics including mineralization and
2466 immobilization, leaching, nitrification, denitrification, volatilization and crop uptake are extremely
2467 complex, different approaches with varying levels of detail have been implemented or coupled with
2468 crop growth processes. In cropping systems where application rates of mineral nitrogen fertilizers are

2469 on the order of potential crop demand, only the uptake of the applied mineral N may be considered to
2470 cover the actual/daily crop N demand in the simulations. In organic agriculture or in low-input systems
2471 as e.g., in small-holder subsistence farms in developing countries, soil nitrogen routines must consider
2472 the nitrogen mineralization and immobilization processes which are linked to soil organic matter.
2473 Usually, the more complex soil nitrogen routines in existing crop models consider different soil
2474 nitrogen pools (linked to soil carbon pools) and their respective decomposition and mineralization
2475 rates are calculated taking into account environmental variables like soil moisture, soil temperature or
2476 soil clay content (CENTURY; Parton 1992; CANDY; Franko 1995; DAISY; Abrahamsen and Hansen
2477 2000; SIMPLACE; Gaiser 2013). Crop nitrogen uptake is then driven by the amount of soil mineral N
2478 over the rooted zone, crop nitrogen demand and in some cases the density and N uptake capacity of the
2479 roots in the respective soil layers. Nitrogen leaching as an important process in humid climates, is
2480 usually also considered in these more complex soil nitrogen sub-routines, whereas other soil related
2481 processes like nitrification, denitrification or ammonium fixation and volatilization are implemented in
2482 only a few models (e.g., DNDC, Kraus et al. (2015) ; and CropSyst, Stöckle et al. (2014)).
2483 Besides nitrogen as one of the major crop nutrients, there are only a few crop models which consider
2484 phosphorus as a limiting factor with (CropSyst, APSIM, DSSAT, SIMPLACE, EPIC, Williams and
2485 Izaurrealde 2005) or without (WOFOST; van Ittersum et al. 2003; Lintul5; Lefelaar 2012) taking into
2486 account the dynamics of adsorption or fixation of inorganic P onto the soil matrix or the
2487 transformation of organic soil P. Among other major crop nutrients like potassium, magnesium,
2488 calcium or sulfur, only potassium is taken into account by four dynamic crop models either with
2489 (EPIC Version EPICSEAR; De Barros et al. 2004) or without (WOFOST, Lintul5, SIMPLACE)
2490 associated transformation and adsorption processes in the soil. To our knowledge modeling of the
2491 availability of micronutrients in the soil or their uptake by the crop is still a gap when coupling soil
2492 processes with crop and biomass production although micro-nutrient deficiency are a well-known
2493 obstacle to advance intensification and increase yields on highly weathered soils in Africa, Asia and
2494 South America (Voortman et al. 2003).
2495 Modeling soil conditions that are adverse to crop growth (e.g., salt toxicity, water logging, soil
2496 compaction, aluminium and iron toxicity) and quantification of their impacts on crop roots and crop
2497 growth is another bottleneck when coupling soil processes with crop and biomass production. The
2498 crop models EPIC and STICS use different relationships between either soil strength (Williams and
2499 Izaurrealde 2005) or soil bulk density (Brisson et al. 2003) and root elongation rate to describe the
2500 effect of soil compaction on root growth and subsequently water and nutrient uptake. In addition, the
2501 EPIC model estimates the effect of aluminum toxicity on root growth by relating Al saturation in the
2502 soil to a crop specific maximum Al saturation threshold (USDA 1990). In a more recent windows
2503 based version of EPIC, the effect of increased soil electrical conductivity as a measure of high salt
2504 concentrations in the soil on crop growth had been incorporated (Gerik et al. 2013). Water logging can
2505 also be an important growth limitation to crops and in particular to roots. The processes leading to

2506 water logging i.e. permanent saturation of the root zone with water can be manifold either through
2507 reduced percolation of rainwater, occurrence of surface water flooding or ground water rise. One the
2508 one hand, modeling of water logging requires therefore detailed parametrization of soil hydraulic
2509 conductivity curve and reliable estimation of 1D, 2D or 3D soil water fluxes including landscape scale
2510 hydrological processes in the case of ground water influence of flooding from adjacent surface water
2511 streams. On the other hand, modeling the crop-specific, physiological response of the root system and
2512 its interaction with the shoot is neither fully understood nor adequately implemented in crop models. A
2513 first attempt to cover some of the challenges is made recently by (Stöckle et al. 2014) through
2514 coupling a landscape scale hydrological model with CropSyst (CropSyst-Microbasin). In summary,
2515 there are many interfaces between soil processes, the crop roots and their interaction with the shoot
2516 which are finally determining crop yield and biomass production and which all require further
2517 investigations at the plot, field and landscape level and the subsequent implementation into coupled
2518 soil-plant modeling platforms to simulate biomass production under a wide range of climate, soil and
2519 management conditions.

2520 Regarding the technical implementation of crop simulation models, there are, besides a wide range of
2521 one package crop simulation models, several crop-simulation environments relying on a modular
2522 structure to describe crop-growth processes at the field scale. These environments all consider above-
2523 ground and below-ground processes, but with different degrees of detail (Keating 2003; Donatelli et
2524 al. 2010). Examples for developments in Germany are SIMPLACE (<http://www.simplace.net> Gaiser et
2525 al. (2013), Expert-N (<http://www.helmholtz-muenchen.de/en/iboe/expertn/>), MONICA (Nendel 2011)
2526 and HUME (Kage and Stuetzel 1999; Ratjen 2012). At the global scale, the DSSAT (<http://dssat.net/>)
2527 platform is quite wide-spread for 1-D applications from field to region. As an example for 3-D
2528 applications, the OpenAlea (Cokelaer et al. 2010) open-source project should be mentioned.

2529

2530 8 Summary and outlook

2531

2532 Since the early attempts in systematic modeling of soil processes that emerged with advances in
2533 analog and digital computers in the midst of the 20th century, there has been great progress across a
2534 broad range of space and time scales (pores to catchments and seconds to decades). Yet, our
2535 understanding of the complexity of soil processes and ability to observe these processes at ever
2536 increasing resolution point to significant gaps in representing this critical compartment of biosphere.
2537 The growing importance of soil in a host of topics, its central role in a range of ecosystem services,
2538 climate, food security and other global terrestrial processes makes quantification and modeling of soil
2539 processes an urgent challenge for the soil science and neighboring communities. In this paper we
2540 focused on identifying various key challenges in modeling soil processes that are directly related to
2541 the hierarchical and complex organization of soils and soil systems and the functioning of soils in

2542 providing ecosystem services to society. Many of these challenges have been addressed in the
2543 individual sections, and here we identify four overarching grand challenges shown in table 4 that we
2544 think will dominate in the field of soil processes modeling.

2545

2546 Table 4 HERE

2548

2549 The first challenge is that of sharing knowledge across disciplines. It comprises the need to exchange
2550 knowledge about soil processes modeling across the different soil disciplines, and amongst other
2551 Earth, ecology and plant sciences. Typically, many available soil models have been developed within
2552 different communities and disciplines addressing specific research questions covering a broad range
2553 of scales and often serving different purposes. Integrating our knowledge of soil process modeling in
2554 climate models, crop growth models and ecological models may enhance our understanding of the
2555 complex interactions between the different compartments and their feedback mechanisms. The
2556 development and establishment of a community modeling platform could facilitate the exchange of
2557 knowledge on modeling soil processes, provide techniques and approaches to efficiently couple soil
2558 processes, and develop integrated models and benchmarks to test existing and newly developed
2559 models. The platform could also serve as a link with other disciplines listed above. A better
2560 interaction of the soil science community with other Earth science disciplines may enhance our
2561 understanding of soil processes in the landscape by, for example, coupling state-of-the-art approaches
2562 to soil infiltration with overland flow modeling, particle detachment, transport and deposition
2563 modeling across a heterogeneous landscape; or, through coupling of soil physical and chemical
2564 processes and soil biology to better understand and quantify supporting and degrading processes and
2565 key ecosystem services. The soil supporting and degrading processes and ecosystem services
2566 described in sections 2 and 3 are determined by the combined effect of a multitude of individual
2567 processes. We are convinced that improved modeling of soil processes will also lead to a better
2568 quantification and prediction of ecosystem services. The development of more complex soil models
2569 and soil modeling platforms, together with the availability of novel experimental techniques, will also
2570 allow us to design new experimental set-ups based on soil model simulations, which will then enable
2571 the retrieval of soil properties that are difficult to measure. The second overarching challenge for soil
2572 modeling is the integration of pore- and local-scale soil process modeling into field-scale to global
2573 scale land surface models, crop models, climate models and terrestrial models of biogeochemical
2574 processes. These complex codes address issues such as parameterization of root water uptake
2575 processes, biotic processes, and upscaling of hydraulic, and chemical and biological properties,
2576 among others. Effective integration will require the development of upscaling methods and
2577 approaches to derive effective parameters and equations that allow us to include pore- and local-scale
2578 process understanding, so we can describe processes at the field scale and beyond. Upscaling soil
2579 processes beyond the field scale will require us to embed and couple soils and soil process modeling

2580 into a landscape setting (see challenge 1). This will entail a larger focus on non-local processes that
2581 are controlled by lateral water, energy and matter fluxes. Lateral groundwater flow plays an important
2582 role in linking these processes because it influences, in part, the water table depth and its important
2583 consequences for soil water contents and water fluxes. Lateral fluxes in the atmosphere also play an
2584 important role for determining the upper boundary of the soil system. Besides lateral water and
2585 energy fluxes, lateral fluxes of soil material also become important when considering soil building
2586 processes over longer time scales. These processes need to be coupled with predominantly vertical
2587 fluxes of dissolved substances.

2588 The third challenge embraces the monumental task of quantitative description of soil biotic processes
2589 at scales ranging from microbial activity at pores or on root surfaces to the emergence of vegetation
2590 patterns over extensive landscapes. In the core of this challenge is the representation of highly
2591 adaptive and dynamic biological processes that respond in new and surprising ways to changes in
2592 climate, land use, and management practices and their upscaling to represent fluxes and changes in
2593 soil properties at agronomic or climatic relevant scales. The rapid advances in remote observational
2594 methods and molecular genetic capabilities necessitate advanced modeling frameworks for effective
2595 integration of new observations with process understanding. Especially the upscaling of soil biotic
2596 processes may benefit from novel measurement techniques that enable to quantify and visualize
2597 microbial processes at pore scale level and at the interfaces of water and soil matrix. An important
2598 component of this is the need to agree on a framework of describing the soil microbial community in
2599 a manner that allows its functional dynamics and interaction with soil physical, chemical and
2600 biological components to be described for modeling purposes, without oversimplification or loss of
2601 meaning.

2602 Finally, we need to address the question of how to value ecosystem services using soil properties and
2603 processes in the proposed integrated modeling approach. We have used an ecosystem's framework to
2604 identify the role and importance of soil modeling in characterizing and quantifying ecosystem
2605 services and we have identified specific challenges for improving soil process modeling. From a soil
2606 modeling perspective, we may want to challenge our soils community to work with ecologists,
2607 sociologists and economists, to develop such a framework that allows to differentiate soils based on
2608 their functioning properties and include land use and/or tracking changes of supporting/degrading
2609 processes towards building spatial maps that quantifying ecosystem services. This would be highly
2610 significant as far as a soil community contribution to local, regional policy and decision making and
2611 towards providing sustainable options for future land use and land use changes.

2612 To meet these challenges, an international community effort is required, similar to initiatives in
2613 systems biology, hydrology, and climate and crop research. We are therefore establishing an
2614 international soil modeling consortium (<https://soil-modeling.org/>) with the aims of 1) establishing
2615 formal structures for guiding and building community-wide capabilities (repository, conferences,
2616 journal sections, liaisons with societies) in order to bring together experts in soil process modeling

2617 within all major soil disciplines; 2) addressing major scientific gaps in describing key processes and
2618 their long term impacts with respect to the different functions and ecosystem services provided by
2619 soil; 3) intercomparing soil model performance based on standardized and harmonized data sets; 4)
2620 providing adaptive and peer-reviewed protocols for model components, benchmarking and testing,
2621 input information, ontologies and data formats ; 5) integrating soil modeling expertise and state of the
2622 art knowledge on soil processes in climate, land surface, ecological, crop and contaminant models; 6)
2623 linking process models with new observations, measurements and data- evaluation technologies for
2624 mapping and characterizing soil properties across scales; and 7) developing partnerships with similar
2625 modeling endeavors, industry and funding agencies. The consortium will bring together modelers and
2626 experimental soil scientists at the forefront of new technologies and approaches to characterize soils.
2627 By addressing these aims, the consortium will improve the role of soil modeling as a knowledge
2628 dissemination instrument in addressing key global issues, and we will stimulate the development of
2629 translational research activities.

2630

2631 **9 References**

- 2632 Aarts, E., and J. Korst. 1989. Simulated annealing and boltzmann machines: A stochastic approach to
2633 combinatorial optimization and neural computing. . Wiley - interscience series in discrete
2634 mathematics and optimization. John Wiley & Sons Ltd.
- 2635 Abrahamsen, P., and S. Hansen. 2000. Daisy: An open soil-crop-atmosphere system model.
2636 *Environmental Modelling & Software* 15:313-330.
- 2637 Abril, J.-M., R. García-Tenorio, S.M. Enamorado, M.D. Hurtado, L. Andreu, and A. Delgado. 2008. The
2638 cumulative effect of three decades of phosphogypsum amendments in reclaimed marsh soils
2639 from sw spain: 226ra, 238u and cd contents in soils and tomato fruit. *Science of The Total*
2640 *Environment* 403:80-88.
- 2641 Adamchuk, V.I., and R.A.V. Rossel. 2010. Development of on-the-go proximal soil sensor systems.
2642 *Proximal soil sensing*.
- 2643 Addiscott, T.M. 1977. Simple computer-model for leaching in structured soils *Journal of Soil Science*
2644 28:554-563.
- 2645 Adhikari, K., and A.E. Hartemink. 2015. Linking soils to ecosystem services - a global review
2646 *Geoderma* 262:101-111.
- 2647 Adhikari, K., A.E. Hartemink, B. Minasny, R.B. Kheir, M.B. Greve, and M.H. Greve. 2014. Digital
2648 mapping of soil organic carbon contents and stocks in denmark. *Plos One* 9.
- 2649 Aitkenhead, M., D. Donnelly, M. Coull, and E. Hastings. 2014. Innovations in environmental
2650 monitoring using mobile phone technology – a review. *International Journal of Interactive*
2651 *Mobile Technologies* 8.
- 2652 Aksoy, H., and M.L. Kavvas. 2005. A review of hillslope and watershed scale erosion and sediment
2653 transport models. *Catena* 64:247-271.
- 2654 Al-Sultan, K.S., and M.A. Al-Fawzan. 1997. A tabu search hooke and jeeves algorithm for
2655 unconstrained optimization. *European Journal of Operational Research* 103:198-208.
- 2656 Alaoui, A., J. Lipiec, and H.H. Gerke. 2011. A review of the changes in the soil pore system due to soil
2657 deformation: A hydrodynamic perspective. *Soil & Tillage Research* 115:1-15.
- 2658 Albright, W.H., C.H. Benson, G.W. Gee, A.C. Roesler, T. Abichou, P. Apiwantragoon, B.F. Lyles, and
2659 S.A. Rock. 2004. Field water balance of landfill final covers. *Journal of Environmental Quality*
2660 33:2317-2332.

2661 Alley, W.M. 1984. The palmer drought severity index: Limitations and assumptions. *Journal of*
2662 *Climate and Applied Meteorology* 23:1100-1109.

2663 Allison, G.B., C.J. Barnes, and M.W. Hughes. 1983. The distribution of deuterium and o-18 in dry soils.
2664 2. Experimental. *Journal of Hydrology* 64:377-397.

2665 Allison, S.D. 2012. A trait-based approach for modelling microbial litter decomposition. *Ecology*
2666 *Letters* 15:1058-1070.

2667 Allison, S.D. 2014. Modeling adaptation of carbon use efficiency in microbial communities. *Frontiers*
2668 *in microbiology* 5.

2669 Alonso, E.E., A. Gens, and A. Josa. 1990. A constitutive model for partially saturated soils.
2670 *Géotechnique* 40:405-430.

2671 Amundson, R., A.A. Berhe, J.W. Hopmans, C. Olson, A.E. Sztein, and D.L. Sparks. 2015. Soil and human
2672 security in the 21st century. *Science:Accepted*.

2673 Araguás-Araguás, L., K. Rozanski, R. Gonfiantini, and D. Louvat. 1995. Isotope effects accompanying
2674 vacuum extraction of soil water for stable isotope analyses. *Journal of Hydrology* 168:159-
2675 171.

2676 Archontoulis, S.V., F.E. Miguez, and K.J. Moore. 2014. Evaluating apsim maize, soil water, soil
2677 nitrogen, manure, and soil temperature modules in the midwestern united states. *Agronomy*
2678 *Journal* 106:1025-1040.

2679 Arnold, J.G., and N. Fohrer. 2005. Swat2000: Current capabilities and research opportunities in
2680 applied watershed modelling. *Hydrological Processes* 19:563-572.

2681 Arrouays, D., M.G. Grundy, A.E. Hartemink, J.W. Hempel, G.B.M. Heuvelink, S.Y. Hong, P. Lagacherie,
2682 G. Lelyk, A.B. McBratney, N.J. McKenzie, M.D.L. Mendonca-Santos, B. Minasny, L.
2683 Montanarella, I.O.A. Odeh, P.A. Sanchez, J.A. Thompson, and G.L. Zhang. 2014.
2684 Globalsoilmap: Toward a fine-resolution global grid of soil properties. p. 93-134. *In* D.L.
2685 Sparks (ed.) *Advances in agronomy*, vol 125.

2686 Arulampalam, M.S., S. Maskell, N. Gordon, and T. Clapp. 2002. A tutorial on particle filters for online
2687 nonlinear/non-gaussian bayesian tracking. *Signal Processing, IEEE Transactions on* 50:174-
2688 188.

2689 Assouline, S. 2006a. Modeling the relationship between soil bulk density and the water retention
2690 curve. *Vadose Zone J.* 5:554-563.

2691 Assouline, S. 2006b. Modeling the relationship between soil bulk density and the hydraulic
2692 conductivity function. *Vadose Zone J.* 5:697-705.

2693 Assouline, S. 2013. Infiltration into soils: Conceptual approaches and solutions. *Water Resources*
2694 *Research* 49:1755-1772.

2695 Assouline, S., and A. Ben-Hur. 2006. Effects of rainfall intensity and slope gradient on the dynamics of
2696 interrill erosion during soil surface sealing. *Catena* 66:211-220.

2697 Assouline, S., and K. Narkis. 2011. Effects of long-term irrigation with treated wastewater on the
2698 hydraulic properties of a clayey soil. *Water Resources Research* 47.

2699 Assouline, S., and K. Narkis. 2013. Effect of long-term irrigation with treated wastewater on the root
2700 zone environment. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.

2701 Assouline, S., D. Russo, A. Silber, and D. Or. 2015. Balancing water scarcity and quality for sustainable
2702 irrigated agriculture. *Water Resources Research* 51:3419-3436.

2703 Assouline, S., J.S. Selker, and J.Y. Parlange. 2007. A simple accurate method to predict time of
2704 ponding under variable intensity rainfall. *Water Resources Research* 43.

2705 Assouline, S., and U. Shavit. 2004. Effects of management policies, including artificial recharge, on
2706 salinization in a sloping aquifer: The israeli coastal aquifer case. *Water Resources Research*
2707 40.

2708 Atikenhead, M. 2016. Modelling soil ecosystem services. A review on the state of the art in scenario
2709 modelling for environmental management.

2710 Attard, E., S. Recous, A. Chabbi, C. De Berranger, N. Guillaumaud, J. Labreuche, L. Philippot, B.
2711 Schmid, and X. Le Roux. 2011. Soil environmental conditions rather than denitrifier

2712 abundance and diversity drive potential denitrification after changes in land uses. *Global*
2713 *Change Biology* 17:1975-1989.

2714 Babaeian, E., M. Homae, C. Montzka, H. Vereecken, and A.A. Norouzi. 2015. Towards retrieving soil
2715 hydraulic properties by hyperspectral remote sensing. *Vadose Zone J.* 14.

2716 Balay, S., S. Abhyankar, M. Adams, J. Brown, P. Brune, K. Buschelman, L. Dalcin, V. Eijkhout, W.
2717 Gropp, D. Karpeyev, D. Kaushik, M. Knepley, L. Curfman McInnes, K. Rupp, B. Smith, S.
2718 Zampini, and H. Zhang. 2015. *Petsc users manual, revision 3.6. Mathematics and computer*
2719 *science division. Argonne National Laboratory:238.*

2720 Balks, M.R., W.J. Bond, and C.J. Smith. 1998. Effects of sodium accumulation on soil physical
2721 properties under an effluent-irrigated plantation. *Australian Journal of Soil Research* 36:821-
2722 830.

2723 Barnes, C.J., and G.B. Allison. 1983. The distribution of deuterium and o-18 in dry soils. 1. Theory.
2724 *Journal of Hydrology* 60:141-156.

2725 Barnes, C.J., and G.B. Allison. 1984. The distribution of deuterium and o-18 in dry soils. 3. Theory for
2726 non-isothermal water-movement. *Journal of Hydrology* 74:119-135.

2727 Barnes, C.J., and G.R. Walker. 1989. The distribution of deuterium and o-18 in dry soils during
2728 unsteady evaporation from a dry soil. *Journal of Hydrology* 112:55-67.

2729 Barton, J.W., and R.M. Ford. 1997. Mathematical model for characterization of bacterial migration
2730 through sand cores. *Biotechnology and Bioengineering* 53:487-496.

2731 Bastiaanssen, W.G.M., M. Menenti, R.A. Feddes, and A.A.M. Holtslag. 1998. A remote sensing surface
2732 energy balance algorithm for land (sebal). 1. Formulation. *Journal of Hydrology* 212–213:198-
2733 212.

2734 Basu, S.K., and N. Kumar. 2014. *Modelling and simulation of diffusive processes: Methods and*
2735 *applications. Simulation foundations, methods and applications. Springer International*
2736 *Switzerland.*

2737 Bateman, I.J., A.R. Harwood, G.M. Mace, R.T. Watson, D.J. Abson, B. Andrews, A. Binner, A. Crowe,
2738 B.H. Day, S. Dugdale, C. Fezzi, J. Foden, D. Hadley, R. Haines-Young, M. Hulme, A. Kontoleon,
2739 A.A. Lovett, P. Munday, U. Pascual, J. Paterson, G. Perino, A. Sen, G. Siriwardena, D. van
2740 Soest, and M. Termansen. 2013. Bringing ecosystem services into economic decision-making:
2741 Land use in the united kingdom. *Science* 341:45-50.

2742 Batjes, N.H. 2009. Harmonized soil profile data for applications at global and continental scales:
2743 Updates to the wise database. *Soil Use and Management* 25:124-127.

2744 Batlle-Aguilar, J., A. Brovelli, A. Porporato, and D.A. Barry. 2011. Modelling soil carbon and nitrogen
2745 cycles during land use change. A review. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development* 31:251-274.

2746 Battiti, R. 1992. First- and second-order methods for learning: Between steepest descent and
2747 newton's method. *Neural Computation* 4:141-166.

2748 Baumgarten, W., J. Dorner, and R. Horn. 2013. Microstructural development in volcanic ash soils
2749 from south chile. *Soil & Tillage Research* 129:48-60.

2750 Bayer, A., M. Bachmann, r.A. Mülle, and H. Kaufmann. 2012. A comparison of feature-based mlr and
2751 pls regression techniques for the prediction of three soil constituents in a degraded south
2752 african ecosystem. *Applied and Environmental Soil Science Volume* 2012:20.

2753 Bear, J. 1972. *Dynamics of fluid in porous media. American Elsevier Publ., New York.*

2754 Bellin, A., A. Rinaldo, W.J.P. Bosma, S. Vanderzee, and Y. Rubin. 1993. Linear equilibrium adsorbing
2755 solute transport in physically and chemically heterogeneous porous formations. 1. Analytical
2756 solutions. *Water Resources Research* 29:4019-4030.

2757 Beltman, W.H.J., J.J.T.I. Boesten, and S.E.A.T.M. van der Zee. 2008. Spatial moment analysis of
2758 transport of nonlinearly adsorbing pesticides using analytical approximations. *Water Resour.*
2759 *Res.* 44:W05417.

2760 Ben-Dor, E. 2002. Quantitative remote sensing of soil properties. *Advances in Agronomy* 75:173-243.

2761 Ben-Dor, E., S. Chabrillat, J.A.M. Dematte, G.R. Taylor, J. Hill, M.L. Whiting, and S. Sommer. 2009.
2762 Using imaging spectroscopy to study soil properties. *Remote Sensing of Environment*
2763 113:S38-S55.

2764 Ben-Dor, E., Y. Inbar, and Y. Chen. 1997. The reflectance spectra of organic matter in the visible near-
2765 infrared and short wave infrared region (400-2500 nm) during a controlled decomposition
2766 process. *Remote Sensing of Environment* 61:1-15.

2767 Berlemont, R., and A.C. Martiny. 2013. Phylogenetic distribution of potential cellulases in bacteria.
2768 *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* 79:1545-1554.

2769 Berli, M., M. Accorsi, and D. Or. 2006. Size and shape evolution of pores in a viscoplastic matrix under
2770 compression. *International journal for numerical and analytical methods in geomechanics*
2771 30:1259-1281.

2772 Berli, M., A. Carminati, T. Ghezzehei, and D. Or. 2008. Evolution of unsaturated hydraulic conductivity
2773 of aggregated soils due to compressive forces. *Water Resources Research* 44.

2774 Berli, M., Casini, F., Attinger, W., Schulin, R., Springmann, S.M., Kirby, J.M. . 2015. Compressibility of
2775 undisturbed silt loam sil. *Vadose Zone J.*

2776 Berli, M., J. Kirby, S. Springman, and R. Schulin. 2003. Modelling compaction of agricultural subsoils
2777 by tracked heavy construction machinery under various moisture conditions in switzerland.
2778 *Soil and Tillage Research* 73:57-66.

2779 Beven, K. 2006. A manifesto for the equifinality thesis. *Journal of Hydrology (Amsterdam)* 320:18-36.

2780 Beven, K., and P. Germann. 2013. Macropores and water flow in soils revisited. *Water Resources*
2781 *Research* 49:3071-3092.

2782 Bierkens, P.A.F., P. de Willigen. 2000. Upscaling and downscaling methods for environmental
2783 research. Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2000.

2784 Blagodatsky, S., and P. Smith. 2012. Soil physics meets soil biology: Towards better mechanistic
2785 prediction of greenhouse gas emissions from soil. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 47:78-92.

2786 Bonfante, A., A. Basile, M. Acutis, R. De Mascellis, P. Manna, A. Perego, and F. Terribile. 2010. Swap,
2787 cropsyst and macro comparison in two contrasting soils cropped with maize in northern italy.
2788 *Agricultural Water Management* 97:1051-1062.

2789 Bonten, L.T.C., J.G. Kroes, P. Groenendijk, and B. Van Der Grift. 2012. Modeling diffusive cd and zn
2790 contaminant emissions from soils to surface waters. *Journal of Contaminant Hydrology* 138-
2791 139:113-122.

2792 Bornemann, L., G. Welp, and W. Amelung. 2010. Particulate organic matter at the field scale: Rapid
2793 acquisition using mid-infrared spectroscopy. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 74:1147-
2794 1156.

2795 Bornemann, L., G. Welp, S. Brodowski, A. Rodionov, and W. Amelung. 2008. Rapid assessment of
2796 black carbon in soil organic matter using mid-infrared spectroscopy. *Organic Geochemistry*
2797 39:1537-1544.

2798 Bradford, J.M., and G.R. Foster. 1996. Interrill soil erosion and slope steepness factors. *Soil Science*
2799 *Society of America Journal* 60:909-915.

2800 Bras, R.L., and D.J. Seo. 1987. Irrigation control in the presence of salinity-extended linear quadratic
2801 approach. *Water Resources Research* 23:1153-1161.

2802 Braud, I., T. Bariac, P. Biron, and M. Vauclin. 2009. Isotopic composition of bare soil evaporated water
2803 vapor. Part ii: Modeling of rubic iv experimental results. *Journal of Hydrology* 369:17-29.

2804 Braud, I., T. Bariac, J.P. Gaudet, and M. Vauclin. 2005. Sispac-isotope, a coupled heat, water and
2805 stable isotope (hdo and (h2o)-o-18) transport model for bare soil. Part i. Model description
2806 and first verifications. *Journal of Hydrology* 309:277-300.

2807 Bresler, E. 1973. Simultaneous transport of solute and water under transient unsaturated flow
2808 conditions. *Water Resour. Res.* 9:975-986.

2809 Bresler, E. 1987. Application of a conceptual-model to irrigation water requirement and salt
2810 tolerance of crops. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 51:788-793.

2811 Bresler, E., and R.J. Hanks. 1969. Numerical method for estimating simultaneous flow of water and
2812 salt in unsaturated soils. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings* 33:827-832.

2813 Bresler, E., and G.J. Hoffman. 1986. Irrigation management for soil-salinity control- theories and
2814 tests. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 50:1552-1559.

2815 Brian R. Bicknell, J.C.I., John L. Kittle, Jr., Anthony S. Donigian, Jr. and Robert C. Johanson. 1997.
2816 Hydrological simulation program—fortran user's manual for version 11. p. 755.

2817 Bricklemeyer, R.S., P.R. Miller, P.J. Turk, K. Paustian, T. Keck, and G.A. Nielsen. 2007. Sensitivity of the
2818 century model to scale-related soil texture variability. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*
2819 71:784-792.

2820 Bridges, E.M. 1992. World map of the status of human-induced soil degradation, Oldeman, I. R.,
2821 Hakkeling, R. T. A. and Sombroek, W. G. Unep/Isric, Nairobi, Kenya, 1990. ISBN 90 6672 042 5,
2822 US\$25.00 (paperback), 3 maps and explanatory note + 27 pp. *Land Degradation &*
2823 *Development* 3:68-69.

2824 Brimhall, G.H., and W.E. Dietrich. 1987. Constitutive mass balance relations between chemical-
2825 composition, volume, density, porosity, and strain in metasomatic hydrochemical systems -
2826 results on weathering and pedogenesis. *Geochimica Et Cosmochimica Acta* 51:567-587.

2827 Brisson, N., C. Gary, E. Justes, R. Roche, B. Mary, D. Ripoche, D. Zimmer, J. Sierra, P. Bertuzzi, P.
2828 Burger, F. Bussiere, Y.M. Cabidoche, P. Cellier, P. Debaeke, J.P. Gaudillere, C. Henault, F.
2829 Maraux, B. Seguin, and H. Sinoquet. 2003. An overview of the crop model STICS. *European*
2830 *Journal of Agronomy* 18:309-332.

2831 Brown, D.J. 2007. Using a global VNIR soil-spectral library for local soil characterization and landscape
2832 modeling in a 2nd-order Uganda watershed. *Geoderma* 140:444-453.

2833 Buchanan, S., J. Triantafyllidis, I.O.A. Odeh, and R. Subasinghe. 2012. Digital soil mapping of
2834 compositional particle-size fractions using proximal and remotely sensed ancillary data.
2835 *Geophysics* 77:WB201-WB211.

2836 Bui, E.N., and B.L. Henderson. 2013. C:N:P stoichiometry in Australian soils with respect to vegetation
2837 and environmental factors. *Plant and Soil* 373:553-568.

2838 Burgers, G., P. Jan van Leeuwen, and G. Evensen. 1998. Analysis scheme in the ensemble Kalman
2839 filter. *Monthly Weather Review* 126:1719-1724.

2840 Byrd, R.H., R.B. Schnabel, and G.A. Shultz. 1987. A trust region algorithm for nonlinearly constrained
2841 optimization. *SIAM Journal on Numerical Analysis* 24:1152-1170.

2842 Calzolari, C., F. Ungaro, N. Filippi, M. Guermandi, F. Malucelli, N. Marchi, F. Staffilani, and P. Tarocco.
2843 2016. A methodological framework to assess the multiple contributions of soils to ecosystem
2844 services delivery at regional scale. *Geoderma* 261:190-203.

2845 Campbell, C.G., F. Garrido, V. Illera, and M.T. García-González. 2006. Transport of Cd, Cu and Pb in an
2846 acid soil amended with phosphogypsum, sugar foam and phosphoric rock. *Applied*
2847 *Geochemistry* 21:1030-1043.

2848 Carminati, A., and D. Vetterlein. 2013. Plasticity of rhizosphere hydraulic properties as a key for
2849 efficient utilization of scarce resources. *Annals of Botany* 112:277-290.

2850 Casa, R., F. Castaldi, S. Pascucci, A. Palombo, and S. Pignatti. 2013. A comparison of sensor resolution
2851 and calibration strategies for soil texture estimation from hyperspectral remote sensing.
2852 *Geoderma* 197:17-26.

2853 Castrignano, A., G. Buttafuoco, R. Comolli, and A. Castrignano. 2011. Using digital elevation model to
2854 improve soil pH prediction in an alpine doline. *Pedosphere* 21:259-270.

2855 Cazelles, K., W. Otten, P.C. Baveye, and R.E. Falconer. 2013. Soil fungal dynamics: Parameterisation
2856 and sensitivity analysis of modelled physiological processes, soil architecture and carbon
2857 distribution. *Ecological Modelling* 248:165-173.

2858 Celia, M.A., E.T. Bouloutas, and R.L. Zarba. 1990. A general mass-conservative numerical-solution for
2859 the unsaturated flow equation. *Water Resources Research* 26:1483-1496.

2860 Cerdan, O., G. Govers, Y. Le Bissonnais, K. Van Oost, J. Poesen, N. Saby, A. Gobin, A. Vacca, J. Quinton,
2861 K. Auerswald, A. Klik, F. Kwaad, D. Raclot, I. Ionita, J. Rejman, S. Rousseva, T. Muxart, M.J.
2862 Roxo, and T. Dostal. 2010. Rates and spatial variations of soil erosion in Europe: A study
2863 based on erosion plot data. *Geomorphology* 122:167-177.

2864 Cetin, B.C., J. Barhen, and J.W. Burdick. 1993. Terminal repeller unconstrained subenergy tunneling
2865 (trust) for fast global optimization. *Journal of Optimization Theory and Applications* 77:97-
2866 126.

2867 Chan, Y.K., J.D. Van Nostrand, J.Z. Zhou, S.B. Pointing, and R.L. Farrell. 2013. Functional ecology of an
2868 antarctic dry valley. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of*
2869 *America* 110:8990-8995.

2870 Chang, W.-S., and L.J. Halverson. 2003. Reduced water availability influences the dynamics,
2871 development, and ultrastructural properties of *Pseudomonas putida* biofilms *Journal of*
2872 *Bacteriology* 185.

2873 Chapin, F.S., L. Moilanen, and K. Kielland. 1993. Preferential use of organic nitrogen for growth by a
2874 nonmycorrhizal arctic sedge. *Nature* 361:150-153.

2875 Chen, F., W.T. Crow, P.J. Starks, and D.N. Moriasi. 2011. Improving hydrologic predictions of a
2876 catchment model via assimilation of surface soil moisture. *Advances in Water Resources*
2877 34:526-536.

2878 Chen, L.S., S.; Svoray, T.; Assouline, S. 2012. The roles of soil surface sealing, microtopography and
2879 vegetation in rainfall-runoff processes in semi-arid areas. *Water Resour. Res.* 49:1-15.

2880 Chen, Y., and D. Zhang. 2006. Data assimilation for transient flow in geologic formations via ensemble
2881 Kalman filter. *Advances in Water Resources* 29:1107-1122.

2882 Childs, S.W., and R.J. Hanks. 1975. Model of soil salinity effects on crop growth. *Soil Science Society*
2883 *of America Journal* 39:617-622.

2884 Chirico, G.B., H. Medina, and N. Romano. 2010. Functional evaluation of PTF prediction uncertainty:
2885 An application at hillslope scale. *Geoderma* 155:193-202.

2886 Clark, M.P., A.G. Slater, D.E. Rupp, R.A. Woods, J.A. Vrugt, H.V. Gupta, T. Wagener, and L.E. Hay.
2887 2008. Framework for understanding structural errors (fUSE): A modular framework to
2888 diagnose differences between hydrological models. *Water Resources Research* 44.

2889 Cohen. 2010. Marm3d. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Earth Surface* 115.

2890 Cokelaer, T., C. Pradal, and C. Godin. 2010. Introduction to openalea: A platform for plant modelling.
2891 [Online] Available at <http://www.sop.inria.fr/virtualplants/Publications/2010/CPG10/talk.pdf>

2892 Cole, C.V., G.S. Innis, and J.W.B. Stewart. 1978. Simulations of phosphorus cycling in semi arid
2893 grasslands. *Innis, George S.*

2894 Coleman, K., D.S. Jenkinson, G.J. Crocker, P.R. Grace, J. Klir, M. Korschens, P.R. Poulton, and D.D.
2895 Richter. 1997. Simulating trends in soil organic carbon in long-term experiments using RothC-
2896 26.3. *Geoderma* 81:29-44.

2897 Courault, D., B. Seguin, and A. Olioso. 2005. Review on estimation of evapotranspiration from remote
2898 sensing data: From empirical to numerical modeling approaches. *Irrigation and Drainage*
2899 *Systems* 19:223-249.

2900 Coutts, M.P. 1983. Root architecture and tree stability. *Plant and Soil* 71:171-188.

2901 Coutts, M.P. 1986. Components of tree stability in Sitka spruce on peaty gley soil. *Forestry* 59:173-
2902 197.

2903 Coutts, M.P., C.C.N. Nielsen, and B.C. Nicoll. 1999. The development of symmetry, rigidity and
2904 anchorage in the structural root system of conifers. *Plant and Soil* 217:1-15.

2905 Couvreur, V., J. Vanderborght, X. Draye, and M. Javaux. 2014. Dynamic aspects of soil water
2906 availability for isohydric plants: Focus on root hydraulic resistances. *Water Resources*
2907 *Research* 50:8891-8906.

2908 Craig, H. 1961. Isotopic variations in meteoric waters. *Science* 133:1702-&.

2909 Crawford, J.W., L. Deacon, D. Grinev, J.A. Harris, K. Ritz, B.K. Singh, and I. Young. 2011. Microbial
2910 diversity affects self-organization of the soil-microbe system with consequences for function.
2911 *Journal of The Royal Society Interface:rsif20110679.*

2912 Crawford, J.W., L. Deacon, D. Grinev, J.A. Harris, K. Ritz, B.K. Singh, and I. Young. 2012. Microbial
2913 diversity affects self-organization of the soil-microbe system with consequences for function.
2914 *Journal of the Royal Society Interface* 9:1302-1310.

2915 Curtis, T.P., and W.T. Sloan. 2005. Exploring microbial diversity--a vast below. *Science* 309:1331-1333.

2916 Curtis, T.P., W.T. Sloan, and J.W. Scannell. 2002. Estimating prokaryotic diversity and its limits.
2917 *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 99:10494-
2918 10499.

- 2919 Dai, A., K.E. Trenberth, and T. Qian. 2004. A global dataset of palmer drought severity index for 1870–
2920 2002: Relationship with soil moisture and effects of surface warming. *Journal of*
2921 *Hydrometeorology* 5:1117-1130.
- 2922 Daly, K.R., and T. Roose. 2015. Homogenization of two fluid flow in porous media. *Proceedings of the*
2923 *Royal Society of London A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences* 471.
- 2924 Daniel, R. 2004. The soil metagenome - a rich resource for the discovery of novel natural products.
2925 *Current Opinion in Biotechnology* 15:199-204.
- 2926 Dann, R.L., M.E. Close, R. Lee, and L. Pang. 2006. Impact of data quality and model complexity on
2927 prediction of pesticide leaching. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 35:628-640.
- 2928 Darrah, P.R. 1991. Models of the rhizosphere. 1. Microbial-population dynamics around a root
2929 releasing soluble and insoluble carbon *Plant and Soil* 133:187-199.
- 2930 Darrah, P.R., D.L. Jones, G.J.D. Kirk, and T. Roose. 2006. Modelling the rhizosphere: A review of
2931 methods for 'upscaling' to the whole-plant scale. *European Journal of Soil Science* 57:13-25.
- 2932 David, O., J.C. Ascough, W. Lloyd, T.R. Green, K.W. Rojas, G.H. Leavesley, and L.R. Ahuja. 2013. A
2933 software engineering perspective on environmental modeling framework design: The object
2934 modeling system. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 39:201-213.
- 2935 Davidson, M.L.T., T.; Mattia, F.; Manninen, T.; Borderies, P.; Chenerie, I.; Borgeaud, M. 1998. A
2936 validation of multi-scale surfaces roughness description for the modelling of radar
2937 backscattering from bare soil surfaces *ESA Special Publications* 441:395-400.
- 2938 Dawson, Q., C., C. Kechavarzi, P.B. Leeds-Harrison, and R.G.O. Burton. 2010. Subsidence and
2939 degradation of agricultural peatlands in the fenlands of norfolk, uk. *Geoderma* 154:181-187.
- 2940 De Barros, I., J.R. Williams, and T. Gaiser. 2004. Modeling soil nutrient limitations to crop production
2941 in semiarid ne of brazil with a modified epic version i. Changes in the source code of the
2942 model. *Ecological Modelling* 178:441-456.
- 2943 De Benedetto, D., A. Castrignanò, M. Rinaldi, S. Ruggieri, F. Santoro, B. Figorito, S. Gualano, M.
2944 Diacono, and R. Tamborrino. 2013. An approach for delineating homogeneous zones by using
2945 multi-sensor data. *Geoderma* 199:117-127.
- 2946 de Groot, R.S., M.A. Wilson, and R.M.J. Boumans. 2002. A typology for the classification, description
2947 and valuation of ecosystem functions, goods and services. *Ecological Economics* 41:393-408.
- 2948 De Lannoy, G.J., R.H. Reichle, P.R. Houser, V. Pauwels, and N.E. Verhoest. 2007. Correcting for
2949 forecast bias in soil moisture assimilation with the ensemble kalman filter. *Water Resources*
2950 *Research* 43.
- 2951 de Noblet-Ducoudré, N., S. Gervois, P. Ciais, N. Viovy, N. Brisson, B. Seguin, and A. Perrier. 2004.
2952 Coupling the soil-vegetation-atmosphere-transfer scheme orchidee to the agronomy model
2953 stics to study the influence of croplands on the european carbon and water budgets.
2954 *Agronomie* 24:397-407.
- 2955 de Ruiter, P.C., J.C. Moore, K.B. Zwart, L.A. Bouwman, J. Hassink, J. Bloem, J.A. Devos, J.C.Y.
2956 Marinissen, W.A.M. Didden, G. Lebbink, and More. 1993. Simulating of nitrogen
2957 mineralization in the belowground food webs of 2 winter-wheat fields. *JOURNAL OF APPLIED*
2958 *ECOLOGY* 30:95-106.
- 2959 de Vries, F.T., E. Thebault, M. Liiri, K. Birkhofer, M.A. Tsiafouli, L. Bjornlund, H.B. Jorgensen, M.V.
2960 Brady, S. Christensen, P.C. de Ruiter, T. d'Hertefeldt, J. Frouz, K. Hedlund, L. Hemerik, W.H.G.
2961 Hol, S. Hotes, S.R. Mortimer, H. Setälä, S.P. Sgardelis, K. Uteseny, W.H. van der Putten, V.
2962 Wolters, and R.D. Bardgett. 2013. Soil food web properties explain ecosystem services across
2963 european land use systems. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United*
2964 *States of America* 110:14296-14301.
- 2965 Decharme, B., A. Boone, C. Delire, and J. Noilhan. 2011. Local evaluation of the interaction between
2966 soil biosphere atmosphere soil multilayer diffusion scheme using four pedotransfer
2967 functions. *Journal of Geophysical Research-Atmospheres* 116.
- 2968 Dechesne, A., G. Wang, G. Gulez, D. Or, and B.F. Smets. 2010. Hydration-controlled bacterial motility
2969 and dispersal on surfaces. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United*
2970 *States of America* 107:14369-14372.

2971 Défossez, P., G. Richard, T. Keller, V. Adamiade, A. Govind, and B. Mary. 2014. Modelling the impact
2972 of declining soil organic carbon on soil compaction: Application to a cultivated eutric
2973 cambisol with massive straw exportation for energy production in northern France. *Soil and
2974 Tillage Research* 141:44-54.

2975 Dekker, L.W., and C.J. Ritsema. 1994. How water moves in a water repellent sandy soil. 1. Potential
2976 and actual water repellency. *Water Resources Research* 30:2507-2517.

2977 del Mar Alguacil, M., E. Torrecillas, P. Torres, F. Garcia-Orenes, and A. Roldan. 2012. Long-term
2978 effects of irrigation with waste water on soil am fungi diversity and microbial activities: The
2979 implications for agro-ecosystem resilience. *Plos One* 7.

2980 Delmas, M., L.T. Pak, O. Cerdan, V. Souchere, Y. Le Bissonnais, A. Couturier, and L. Sorel. 2012.
2981 Erosion and sediment budget across scale: A case study in a catchment of the European loess
2982 belt. *Journal of Hydrology* 420:255-263.

2983 Dematte, J.A.M., A.A. Sousa, M.C. Alves, M.R. Nanni, P.R. Fiorio, and R.C. Campos. 2006. Determining
2984 soil water status and other soil characteristics by spectral proximal sensing. *Geoderma*
2985 135:179-195.

2986 Dematte, J.A.M., and F.D. Terra. 2014. Spectral pedology: A new perspective on evaluation of soils
2987 along pedogenetic alterations. *Geoderma* 217:190-200.

2988 Den Herder, G., G. Van Isterdael, T. Beeckman, and I. De Smet. 2010. The roots of a new green
2989 revolution. *Trends Plant Sci* 15:600-7.

2990 Dennis, J.E., and J.J. More. 1977. Quasi-newton methods, motivation and theory. *SIAM Review* 19:46-
2991 89.

2992 Diaz, M.J.C., E.D. Fernandez-Nieto, and A.M. Ferreira. 2008. Sediment transport models in shallow
2993 water equations and numerical approach by high order finite volume methods. *Computers &
2994 Fluids* 37:299-316.

2995 Dickinson, R.E., Henderson-Sellers, A. Kennedy, P.J. Wilson, M.F. . 1986. Biosphere-atmosphere
2996 transfer scheme (bats) for the ncar community climate model. *Atmospheric Analysis and
2997 Prediction Division (AAP)*.

2998 Diersch, H.J.G., and P. Perrochet. 1999. On the primary variable switching technique for simulating
2999 unsaturated-saturated flows. *Advances in Water Resources* 23:271-301.

3000 Dimitrov, M., J. Vanderborght, K. Kostov, K. Jadoon, L. Weihermüller, T. Jackson, R. Bindlish, Y.
3001 Pachepsky, M. Schwank, and H. Vereecken. 2014. Soil hydraulic parameters and surface soil
3002 moisture of a tilled bare soil plot inversely derived from I-band brightness temperatures.
3003 *Vadose Zone J.* 13.

3004 Dimitrov, M., J. Vanderborght, K.G. Kostov, K.Z. Jadoon, L. Weihermüller, T.J. Jackson, R. Bindlish, Y.
3005 Pachepsky, M. Schwank, and H. Vereecken. 2014. Soil hydraulic parameters and surface soil
3006 moisture of a tilled bare soil plot inversely derived from I-band brightness temperatures.
3007 *Vadose Zone J.* 13.

3008 Dion, P. 2008. Molecular mechanism of plant and microbe coexistence.

3009 Dominati, E., M. Patterson, and A. Mackay. 2010. A framework for classifying and quantifying the
3010 natural capital and ecosystem services of soils *ECOLOGICAL ECONOMICS* 69:1858-1868.

3011 Dominati, E.J. 2013. Natural capital and ecosystem services of soils. *Ecosystem Services in New
3012 Zealand: Conditions and Trends* 132-142.

3013 Donatelli, M., G. Russell, A. Rizzoli, M. Acutis, M. Adam, I. Athanasiadis, M. Balderacchi, L. Bechini, H.
3014 Belhouchette, G. Bellocchi, J.-E. Bergez, M. Botta, E. Braudeau, S. Bregaglio, L. Carlini, E.
3015 Casellas, F. Celette, E. Ceotto, M. Charron-Moirez, R. Confalonieri, M. Corbeels, L. Criscuolo,
3016 P. Cruz, A. di Guardo, D. Ditto, C. Dupraz, M. Duru, D. Fiorani, A. Gentile, F. Ewert, C. Gary, E.
3017 Habyarimana, C. Jouany, K. Kansou, R. Knapen, G. Filippi, P. Leffelaar, L. Manici, G. Martin, P.
3018 Martin, E. Meuter, N. Muguet, R. Mulia, M. van Noordwijk, R. Oomen, A. Rosenmund, V.
3019 Rossi, F. Salinari, A. Serrano, A. Sorce, G. Vincent, J.-P. Theau, O. Thérond, M. Trevisan, P.
3020 Trevisiol, F. van Evert, D. Wallach, J. Wery, and A. Zerourou. 2010. A component-based
3021 framework for simulating agricultural production and externalities. p. 63-108. *In* F.M.

3022 Brouwer, and M.K. Ittersum (ed.) Environmental and agricultural modelling. Springer
3023 Netherlands.

3024 Donigian, A.S.J., B.R. Bicknell, and J.C. Imhoff. 1995. Hydrological simulation program - fortran (hspf).
3025 . p. 395-442. *In* V.P. Singh (ed.) Computer models of watershed hydrology.

3026 Dubbert, M., M. Cuntz, A. Piayda, C. Maguas, and C. Werner. 2013. Partitioning evapotranspiration -
3027 testing the craig and gordon model with field measurements of oxygen isotope ratios of
3028 evaporative fluxes. *Journal of Hydrology* 496:142-153.

3029 Dudley, L.M., A. Ben-Gal, and U. Shani. 2008. Influence of plant, soil, and water on the leaching
3030 fraction. *Vadose Zone J.* 7:420-425.

3031 Duffner, A., L.P. Weng, E. Hoffland, and S. van der Zee. 2014. Multi-surface modeling to predict free
3032 zinc ion concentrations in low-zinc soils. *Environmental Science & Technology* 48:5700-5708.

3033 Dungait, J.A.J., D.W. Hopkins, A.S. Gregory, and A.P. Whitmore. 2012. Soil organic matter turnover is
3034 governed by accessibility not recalcitrance. *Global Change Biology* 18:1781-1796.

3035 Dunne, S.C., D. Entekhabi, and E.G. Njoku. 2007. Impact of multiresolution active and passive
3036 microwave measurements on soil moisture estimation using the ensemble kalman smoother.
3037 *Ieee Transactions on Geoscience and Remote Sensing* 45:1016-1028.

3038 Dutt, G.R., and K.K. Tanji. 1962. Predicting concentrations of solutes in water percolated through a
3039 column of soil. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 67:3437-&.

3040 Duttmann, R., M. Schwanebeck, M. Nolde, and R. Horn. 2014. Predicting soil compaction risks related
3041 to field traffic during silage maize harvest. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 78:408-
3042 421.

3043 Ebrahimi, A., and D. Or. 2015. Hydration and diffusion processes shape microbial community
3044 organization and function in model soil aggregates. *Water Resour. Res.* 51.

3045 Ebrahimi, A.N., and D. Or. 2014. Microbial dispersal in unsaturated porous media: Characteristics of
3046 motile bacterial cell motions in unsaturated angular pore networks. *Water Resources*
3047 *Research* 50:7406-7429.

3048 Eckern, P. 1950. Raindrop impact as the force initiating soil erosion. *Soil Science Society of america*
3049 15:7-10.

3050 Eggers, C.G., M. Berli, M.L. Accorsi, and D. Or. 2006. Deformation and permeability of aggregated soft
3051 earth materials. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth* 111.

3052 Ehlers, W., and M.J. Goss. 2003. *Water dynamics in plant production*. CABI Publishing, Wallingford,
3053 UK.

3054 Eisenhauer, N., S. Cesarz, R. Koller, K. Worm, and P.B. Reich. 2012. Global change belowground:
3055 Impacts of elevated co2, nitrogen, and summer drought on soil food webs and biodiversity.
3056 *Global Change Biology* 18:435-447.

3057 Ellison, W.D. 1944. Studies of raindrop erosion. *Agric Engineering* 25:131.

3058 Ellison, W.D. 1945. Some effects of raindrops and surface flow on soil erosion and infiltration.
3059 *Transactions - American Geophysical Union* 26:415-429.

3060 Erdal, D., I. Neuweiler, and U. Wollschlaeger. 2014. Using a bias aware enkf to account for unresolved
3061 structure in an unsaturated zone model. *Water Resources Research* 50:132-147.

3062 Erdal, D., M.A. Rahman, and I. Neuweiler. 2015. The importance of state transformations when using
3063 the ensemble kalman filter for unsaturated flow modeling: Dealing with strong
3064 nonlinearities. *Advances in Water Resources*.

3065 Evensen, G. 1994. Sequential data assimilation with a nonlinear quasi-geostrophic model using
3066 monte-carlo methods to forecast error statistics. *Journal of Geophysical Research-Oceans*
3067 99:10143-10162.

3068 Falloon, P., and P. Smith. 2010. Modelling soil carbon dynamics. p. 221-244. *Soil carbon dynamics: An*
3069 *integrated methodology*.

3070 Farahani, H.J., T.A. Howell, W.J. Shuttleworth, and W.C. Bausch. 2007. Evapotranspiration: Progress
3071 in measurement and modeling in agriculture. *Transactions of the Asabe* 50:1627-1638.

3072 Feddes, R.A., P. Kowalik, K. Kolinskamalinka, and H. Zaradny. 1976. Simulation of field water-uptake
3073 by plants using a soil-water dependent root extraction function. *Journal of Hydrology* 31:13-
3074 26.

3075 Feigin, A., E. Pressman, P. Imas, and O. Miltau. 1991. Combined effects of kno3 and salinity on yield
3076 and chemical composition of lettuce and chinese cabbage. *Irrigation Science* 12:223-230.

3077 Ferrer, M., A. Beloqui, K.N. Timmis, and P.N. Golyshin. 2009. Metagenomics for mining new genetic
3078 resources of microbial communities. *Journal of Molecular Microbiology and Biotechnology*
3079 16:109-123.

3080 Finke, P.A. 2012. Modeling the genesis of luvisols as a function of topographic position in loess parent
3081 material. *Quaternary International* 265:3-17.

3082 Finke, P.A., and J.L. Hutson. 2008. Modelling soil genesis in calcareous loess. *Geoderma* 145:462-479.

3083 Fisher, J.B., D.N. Huntzinger, C.R. Schwalm, and S. Sitch. 2014. Modeling the terrestrial biosphere.
3084 *Annual Review of Environment and Resources*, Vol 39 39:91-+.

3085 Flach, G.P., K.P. Crape, M.A. Phifer, L.B. Collard, and L.D. Koffman. 2007. An unsteady dual porosity
3086 representation of tritium leaching from buried concrete rubble. *Vadose Zone J.* 6:336-343.

3087 Flowers, T.J. 1999. Salinisation and horticultural production. *Scientia Horticulturae* 78:1-4.

3088 Focus. 2000. Focus groundwater scenarios in the eu review of active substances. *FOCUS Reference*
3089 *Sanco/321/2000 rev. 2:202.*

3090 Forrester, A., A. Sobester, and A. Keane. 2008. Engineering design via surrogate modelling: A practical
3091 guide. Wiley.

3092 Forsyth, P.A., Y.S. Wu, and K. Pruess. 1995. Robust numerical-methods for saturated-unsaturated
3093 flow with dry initial conditions in heterogeneous media. *Advances in Water Resources* 18:25-
3094 38.

3095 Franko, U., Oelschlaegel, B.,Schenk, S. 1995. : Simulation of temperature-, water- and nitrogen
3096 dynamics using the model candy. *Ecological Modelling* 81.

3097 Fujisada, H., G.B. Bailey, G.G. Kelly, S. Hara, and M.J. Abrams. 2005. Aster dem performance. *Ieee*
3098 *Transactions on Geoscience and Remote Sensing* 43:2707-2714.

3099 Furman, A. 2008. Modeling coupled surface-subsurface flow processes: A review. *Vadose Zone J.*
3100 7:741-756.

3101 Gaiser, P., Ute,Kuepper, Paul Martin,Kautz, Timo,Uteau-Puschmann, Daniel,Ewert, Frank,Enders,
3102 Andreas,Krauss, Gunther. 2013. Modeling biopore effects on root growth and biomass
3103 production on soils with pronounced sub-soil clay accumulation. *Ecological Modelling* 256:6-
3104 15.

3105 Gaiser, T., U. Perkons, P.M. Küpper, T. Kautz, D. Uteau-Puschmann, A. Enders, G. Krauss, and F.
3106 Ewert. 2013. Modeling biopore effects on root growth and biomass production on soils with
3107 pronounced sub-soil clay accumulation. *Ecological Modelling* 256:6-15.

3108 Gaj, M., M. Beyer, P. Koeniger, H. Wanke, J. Hamutoko, and T. Himmelsbach. 2015. In-situ
3109 unsaturated zone stable water isotope ($\delta^2\text{H}$ and $\delta^{18}\text{O}$) measurements in semi-arid
3110 environments using tunable off-axis integrated cavity output spectroscopy. *Hydrol. Earth*
3111 *Syst. Sci. Discuss.* 12:6115-6149.

3112 Galvao, L.S., A.R. Formaggio, E.G. Couto, and D.A. Roberts. 2008. Relationships between the
3113 mineralogical and chemical composition of tropical soils and topography from hyperspectral
3114 remote sensing data. *Isprs Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing* 63:259-271.

3115 Gangi, L., Y. Rothfuss, J. Ogée, L. Wingate, H. Vereecken, and N. Brüggemann. 2015. A new method
3116 for in situ measurements of $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ of soil water and carbon dioxide with high time resolution.
3117 *Vadose Zone Journal*.

3118 Gayler, S., T. Wohling, M. Grzeschik, J. Ingwersen, H.D. Witzmann, K. Warrach-Sagi, P. Hogy, S.
3119 Attinger, T. Streck, and V. Wulfmeyer. 2014. Incorporating dynamic root growth enhances
3120 the performance of noah-mp at two contrasting winter wheat field sites. *Water Resources*
3121 *Research* 50:1337-1356.

3122 Ge, Y., J.A. Thomasson, and R. Sui. 2011. Remote sensing of soil properties in precision agriculture: A
3123 review. *Frontiers of Earth Science* 5:229-238.

- 3124 Ge, Y.F., C.L.S. Morgan, and J.P. Ackerson. 2014. Visnir spectra of dried ground soils predict
3125 properties of soils scanned moist and intact. *Geoderma* 221:61-69.
- 3126 Ge, Y.F., J.A. Thomasson, and R.X. Sui. 2011. Remote sensing of soil properties in precision
3127 agriculture: A review. *Frontiers of Earth Science* 5:229-238.
- 3128 Gerik, T., W. Harman, J.R. Williams, L. Francis, J. Greiner, M. Magre, A. Meinardus, E. Steglich, and R.
3129 Taylor. 2013. Environmental policy integrated climate model, winepic interface manual
3130 version 0810. Blackland Research and Extension Center, Temple, Texas.
- 3131 Gerke, H.H., and M.T. Vangenuchten. 1993. A dual-porosity model for simulating the preferential
3132 movement of water and solutes in structured porous-media. *Water Resources Research*
3133 29:305-319.
- 3134 Gerwitz, A., and E.R. Page. 1974. Empirical mathematical-model to describe plant root systems
3135 *Journal of Applied Ecology* 11:773-781.
- 3136 Ghaley, B.B., and J.R. Porter. 2014. Ecosystem function and service quantification and valuation in a
3137 conventional winter wheat production system with daisy model in denmark. *Ecosystem*
3138 *Services* 10:79-83.
- 3139 Ghassemi, F., A.J. Jakeman, and H.A. Nix. 1995. Avoiding disasters: The role of systems analysis and
3140 an integrated approach in water resources development. *GeoJournal* 35:49-51.
- 3141 Ghezzehei, T.A., and D. Or. 2001. Rheological properties of wet soils and clays under steady and
3142 oscillatory stresses. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 65:624-637.
- 3143 Ghosh, G., S. Kumar, and S.K. Saha. 2012. Hyperspectral satellite data in mapping salt-affected soils
3144 using linear spectral unmixing analysis. *Journal of the Indian Society of Remote Sensing*
3145 40:129-136.
- 3146 Gibson, J.J. 2002. Short-term evaporation and water budget comparisons in shallow arctic lakes using
3147 non-steady isotope mass balance. *Journal of Hydrology* 264:242-261.
- 3148 Gilbert, J.C., and J. Nocedal. 1992. Global convergence properties of conjugate gradient methods for
3149 optimization. *SIAM Journal on Optimization* 2:21-42.
- 3150 Glasser, F.P., J. Marchand, and E. Samson. 2008. Durability of concrete — degradation phenomena
3151 involving detrimental chemical reactions. *Cement and Concrete Research* 38:226-246.
- 3152 Gomez, C., P. Lagacherie, and G. Coulouma. 2012. Regional predictions of eight common soil
3153 properties and their spatial structures from hyperspectral vis-nir data. *Geoderma* 189:176-
3154 185.
- 3155 Govers, G., K. Van Oost, and J. Poesen. 2006. Responses of a semi-arid landscape to human
3156 disturbance: A simulation study of the interaction between rock fragment cover, soil erosion
3157 and land use change. *Geoderma* 133:19-31.
- 3158 Grandjean, G., O. Cerdan, G. Richard, I. Cousin, P. Lagacherie, A. Tabbagh, B. Van Wesemael, A.
3159 Stevens, S. Lambot, F. Carre, R. Maftai, T. Hermann, M. Thornelof, L. Chiarantini, S. Moretti,
3160 A.B. McBratney, and E. Ben Dor. 2010. Digisoil: An integrated system of data collection
3161 technologies for mapping soil properties. *Proximal soil sensing*. Springer.
- 3162 Greve, M.H., R.B. Kheir, M.B. Greve, and P.K. Bocher. 2012. Using digital elevation models as an
3163 environmental predictor for soil clay contents. *Soil Science Society of America Journal*
3164 76:2116-2127.
- 3165 Gruber, A., B. Wessel, M. Huber, and A. Roth. 2012. Operational tandem-x dem calibration and first
3166 validation results. *Isprs Journal of Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing* 73:39-49.
- 3167 Grundy, M.J., R.A.V. Rossel, R.D. Searle, P.L. Wilson, C. Chen, and L.J. Gregory. 2015. Soil and
3168 landscape grid of australia. *Soil Research* 53:835-844.
- 3169 Guber, A.K., Y.A. Pachepsky, M.T. van Genuchten, W.J. Rawls, J. Simunek, D. Jacques, T.J. Nicholson,
3170 and R.E. Cady. 2006. Field-scale water flow simulations using ensembles of pedotransfer
3171 functions for soil water retention. *Vadose Zone J.* 5:234-247.
- 3172 Guber, A.K., Y.A. Pachepsky, A.M. Yakirevich, D.R. Shelton, G. Whelan, D.C. Goodrich, and C.L.
3173 Unkrich. 2014. Modeling runoff and microbial overland transport with kineros2/stwir model:
3174 Accuracy and uncertainty as affected by source of infiltration parameters. *Journal of*
3175 *Hydrology* 519:644-655.

3176 1993. Proc. Fuzzy Systems, 1993., Second IEEE International Conference on. 1993 Year.

3177 Guo, J.H., X.J. Liu, Y. Zhang, J.L. Shen, W.X. Han, W.F. Zhang, P. Christie, K.W.T. Goulding, P.M.

3178 Vitousek, and F.S. Zhang. 2010. Significant acidification in major chinese croplands. *Science*

3179 327:1008-1010.

3180 Gupta, H.V., M.P. Clark, J.A. Vrugt, G. Abramowitz, and M. Ye. 2012. Towards a comprehensive

3181 assessment of model structural adequacy. *Water Resources Research* 48.

3182 Gupta, H.V., S. Sorooshian, and P.O. Yapo. 1998. Toward improved calibration of hydrologic models:

3183 Multiple and noncommensurable measures of information. *Water Resources Research*

3184 34:751-763.

3185 Gupta, H.V., T. Wagener, and Y.Q. Liu. 2008. Reconciling theory with observations: Elements of a

3186 diagnostic approach to model evaluation. *Hydrological Processes* 22:3802-3813.

3187 Gutmann, E.D., and E.E. Small. 2007. A comparison of land surface model soil hydraulic properties

3188 estimated by inverse modeling and pedotransfer functions. *Water Resources Research* 43.

3189 Gysi, M., V. Maeder, and P. Weisskopf. 2001. Pressure distribution underneath tires of agricultural

3190 vehicles. *American Society of Agricultural Engineers* 44:1385-1389.

3191 Hallett, P.D., K.H. Karim, A.G. Bengough, and W. Otten. 2013. Biophysics of the vadose zone: From

3192 reality to model systems and back again. *Vadose Zone Journal* 12.

3193 Hamilton, A.J., F. Stagnitti, X. Xiong, S.L. Kreidl, K.K. Benke, and P. Maher. 2007. Wastewater

3194 irrigation: The state of play. *Vadose Zone J.* 6:823-840.

3195 Handelsman, J., M.R. Rondon, S.F. Brady, J. Clardy, and R.M. Goodman. 1998. Molecular biological

3196 access to the chemistry of unknown soil microbes: A new frontier for natural products.

3197 *Chemistry & Biology* 5:R245-R249.

3198 Hanks, R.R., and S.A. Bowers. 1961. Numerical solution of the moisture flow equation for infiltration

3199 into layered soils. *Soil Soc. Am. Proc.* 26:530-534.

3200 Hansen, S., H.E. Jensen, N.E. Nielsen, and H. Svendsen. 1991. Simulation of nitrogen dynamics and

3201 biomass production in winter-wheat using the danish simulation-model daisy. *Fertilizer*

3202 *Research* 27:245-259.

3203 Hanson, B., J.W. Hopmans, and J. Simunek. 2008. Leaching with subsurface drip irrigation under

3204 saline, shallow groundwater conditions. *Vadose Zone J.* 7:810-818.

3205 Hanson, P.J., J.S. Amthor, S.D. Wullschleger, K.B. Wilson, R.F. Grant, A. Hartley, D. Hui, E.R. Hunt,

3206 D.W. Johnson, J.S. Kimball, A.W. King, Y. Luo, S.G. McNulty, G. Sun, P.E. Thornton, S. Wang,

3207 M. Williams, D.D. Baldocchi, and R.M. Cushman. 2004. Oak forest carbon and water

3208 simulations: Model intercomparisons and evaluations against independent data. *Ecological*

3209 *Monographs* 74:443-489.

3210 Hardelauf, H., M. Javaux, M. Herbst, S. Gottschalk, R. Kasteel, J. Vanderborght, and H. Vereecken.

3211 2007. Parswms: A parallelized model for simulating three-dimensional water flow and solute

3212 transport in variably saturated soils. *Vadose Zone J.* 6:255-259.

3213 Harpole, W.S., J.T. Ngai, E.E. Cleland, E.W. Seabloom, E.T. Borer, M.E.S. Bracken, J.J. Elser, D.S.

3214 Gruner, H. Hillebrand, J.B. Shurin, and J.E. Smith. 2011. Nutrient co-limitation of primary

3215 producer communities. *Ecology Letters* 14:852-862.

3216 Hartemink, A.E., and B. Minasny. 2014. Towards digital soil morphometrics. *Geoderma* 230:305-317.

3217 Haverd, V., and M. Cuntz. 2010. Soil-litter-iso: A one-dimensional model for coupled transport of

3218 heat, water and stable isotopes in soil with a litter layer and root extraction. *Journal of*

3219 *Hydrology* 388:438-455.

3220 Havlin, S.L.T., Werner L. Nelson, James D. Beaton 2013. Soil fertility and fertilizers. Prentice Hall.

3221 Hawkes, C.V., I.F. Wren, D.J. Herman, and M.K. Firestone. 2005. Plant invasion alters nitrogen cycling

3222 by modifying the soil nitrifying community. *Ecology Letters* 8:976-985.

3223 Hedley, C.B., I.J. Yule, M.P. Tuohy, and B.H. Kusumo. 2010. Proximal sensing methods for mapping

3224 soil water status in an irrigated maize field. Proximal soil sensing.

3225 Hengl, T., J.M. de Jesus, R.A. MacMillan, N.H. Batjes, and G.B.M. Heuvelink. 2014. Soilgrids1km -

3226 global soil information based on automated mapping (vol 9, e105992, 2014). *Plos One* 9.

- 3227 Herbst, M., S. Gottschalk, M. Reigel, H. Hardelauf, R. Kasteel, M. Javaux, J. Vanderborght, and H.
3228 Vereecken. 2008b. On preconditioning for a parallel solution of the richards equation.
3229 Computers & Geosciences 34:1958-1963.
- 3230 Herbst, M., H.J. Hellebrand, J. Bauer, J.A. Huisman, J. Simunek, L. Weihermueller, A. Graf, J.
3231 Vanderborght, and H. Vereecken. 2008a. Multiyear heterotrophic soil respiration: Evaluation
3232 of a coupled co2 transport and carbon turnover model. Ecological Modelling 214:271-283.
- 3233 Heuvelink, G.B.M., S.L.G.E. Burgers, A. Tiktak, and F. Van Den Berg. 2010. Uncertainty and stochastic
3234 sensitivity analysis of the geoparl pesticide leaching model. Geoderma 155:186-192.
- 3235 Hillel, D. 1992. Out of the earth: Civilization and the life of the soil. University of California Press.
- 3236 Hinsinger, P., A.G. Bengough, D. Vetterlein, and I. Young. 2009. Rhizosphere: Biophysics,
3237 biogeochemistry and ecological relevance. Plant and Soil 321:117-152.
- 3238 Hinsinger, P., A. Brauman, N. Devau, F. Gerard, C. Jourdan, J.-P. Laclau, E. Le Cadre, B. Jaillard, and C.
3239 Plassard. 2011. Acquisition of phosphorus and other poorly mobile nutrients by roots. Where
3240 do plant nutrition models fail? Plant and Soil 348:29-61.
- 3241 Holtkamp, R., A. Van der Wal, P. Kardol, W.H. Van der Putten, P.C. De Ruiter, and S.C. Dekker. 2011.
3242 Modelling c and n mineralisation in soil food webs during secondary succession on ex-arable
3243 land. Soil Biology and Biochemistry 43:251-260.
- 3244 Hoosbeek, M.R., and R.B. Bryant. 1994. Developing and adapting soil process submodels for use in
3245 the pedodynamic orthod model. SSSA SPECIAL PUBLICATION 39:111-111.
- 3246 Hopmans, J.W., and K.L. Bristow. 2002. Current capabilities and future needs of root water and
3247 nutrient uptake modeling. Advances in Agronomy, Vol 77 77:103-183.
- 3248 Horn, R. 2003. Stress-strain effects in structured unsaturated soils on coupled mechanical and
3249 hydraulic processes. Geoderma 116:77-88.
- 3250 Horn, R., and H. Fleige. 2003. A method for assessing the impact of load on mechanical stability and
3251 on physical properties of soils. Soil and Tillage Research 73:89-99.
- 3252 Horn, R., X. Peng, H. Fleige, and J. Dörner. 2014 Pore rigidity in structured soils—only a theoretical
3253 boundary condition for hydraulic properties? . Soil Science Society of America Journal
3254 77:372-381.
- 3255 Horst, R., P.M. Pardalos, and H.E. Romeijn. 2002. Handbook of global optimization. Springer.
3256 <http://www.openmi.org/>. 2011.
- 3257 Hu, Z.M., X.F. Wen, X.M. Sun, L.H. Li, G.R. Yu, X.H. Lee, and S.G. Li. 2014. Partitioning of
3258 evapotranspiration through oxygen isotopic measurements of water pools and fluxes in a
3259 temperate grassland. Journal of Geophysical Research-Biogeosciences 119:358-371.
- 3260 Huffman, G.J., D.T. Bolvin, E.J. Nelkin, D.B. Wolff, R.F. Adler, G. Gu, Y. Hong, K.P. Bowman, and E.F.
3261 Stocker. 2007. The trmm multisatellite precipitation analysis (tampa): Quasi-global, multiyear,
3262 combined-sensor precipitation estimates at fine scales. Journal of Hydrometeorology 8:38-
3263 55.
- 3264 Huisman, J.H., SS; Redman, JD; Annan, AP 2003. Measuring soil water content with ground
3265 penetrating radar: A review Vadose Zone Journal 2:476-491.
- 3266 Hunt, H.W., and D.H. Wall. 2002. Modelling the effects of loss of soil biodiversity on ecosystem
3267 function. Global Change Biology 8:33-50.
- 3268 IPCC. 2007. Climate change 2007: Synthesis report. Contribution of working groups i, ii and iii to the
3269 fourth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change. p. 104. *In*
3270 R.K.a.R. Pachauri, A. (ed.) IPCC. Geneva, Switzerland.
- 3271 Islam, M.M., T. Saey, P. De Smedt, E. Van de Vijver, S. Delefortrie, and M. Van Meirvenne. 2014.
3272 Modeling within field variation of the compaction layer in a paddy rice field using a proximal
3273 soil sensing system. Soil Use and Management 30:99-108.
- 3274 Jabro, J.D., A.D. Jabro, and R.H. Fox. 2006. Accuracy and performance of three water quality models
3275 for simulating nitrate nitrope losses under corn. Journal of Environmental Quality 35:1227-
3276 1236.
- 3277 Jackson, B., T. Pagella, F. Sinclair, B. Orellana, A. Henshaw, B. Reynolds, N. McIntyre, H. Wheeler, and
3278 A. Eycott. 2013. Polyscape: A gis mapping framework providing efficient and spatially explicit

3279 landscape-scale valuation of multiple ecosystem services. *Landscape and Urban Planning*
3280 112:74-88.

3281 Jacques, D., J. Šimůnek, D. Mallants, and M.T. van Genuchten. 2008. Modeling coupled hydrologic
3282 and chemical processes: Long-term uranium transport following phosphorus fertilization.
3283 *Vadose Zone Journal* 7:698-711.

3284 Jacques, D., J. Šimůnek, D. Mallants, and M.T. van Genuchten. 2008. Modeling coupled hydrologic
3285 and chemical processes: Long-term uranium transport following phosphorus fertilization.
3286 *Vadose Zone Journal* 7:698-711.

3287 Jacques, D., L. Wang, E. Martens, and D. Mallants. 2010. Modelling chemical degradation of concrete
3288 during leaching with rain and soil water types. *Cement and Concrete Research* 40:1306-1313.

3289 Jaeger, E.B., and S.I. Seneviratne. 2011. Impact of soil moisture–atmosphere coupling on european
3290 climate extremes and trends in a regional climate model. *Climate Dynamics* 36:1919-1939.

3291 Jana, R.B., and B.P. Mohanty. 2011. Enhancing ptf's with remotely sensed data for multi-scale soil
3292 water retention estimation. *Journal of Hydrology* 399:201-211.

3293 Janssen, B.H., F.C.T. Guiking, D. Vandereijk, E.M.A. Smaling, J. Wolf, and H. Vanreuler. 1990. A system
3294 for quantitative evaluation of the fertility of tropical soils (quefts). *Geoderma* 46:299-318.

3295 Jasechko, S., Z.D. Sharp, J.J. Gibson, S.J. Birks, Y. Yi, and P.J. Fawcett. 2013. Terrestrial water fluxes
3296 dominated by transpiration. *Nature* 496:347-+.

3297 Javaux, M., V. Couvreur, J. Vander Borght, and H. Vereecken. 2013. Root water uptake: From three-
3298 dimensional biophysical processes to macroscopic modeling approaches. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.

3299 Javaux, M., T. Schroder, J. Vanderborght, and H. Vereecken. 2008. Use of a three-dimensional
3300 detailed modeling approach for predicting root water uptake. *Vadose Zone J.* 7:1079-1088.

3301 Jenerette, G.D., G.A. Barron-Gafford, A.J. Guswa, J.J. McDonnell, and J.C. Villegas. 2012. Organization
3302 of complexity in water limited ecohydrology. *Ecohydrology* 5:184-199.

3303 Jiang, J., S. Feng, Z. Huo, Z. Zhao, and B. Jia. 2011. Application of the swap model to simulate water–
3304 salt transport under deficit irrigation with saline water. *Mathematical and Computer
3305 Modelling* 54:902-911.

3306 Jimenez, B., and T. Asano. 2008. Water reuse an international survey of current practice, issues and
3307 needs introduction. *Water Reuse: An International Survey of Current Practice, Issues and
3308 Needs:XIII-XVI.*

3309 Johnston, R.M., S.J. Barry, E. Bleys, E.N. Bui, C.J. Moran, D.A.P. Simon, P. Carlile, N.J. McKenzie, B.L.
3310 Henderson, G. Chapman, M. Imhoff, D. Maschmedt, D. Howe, C. Grose, N. Schoknecht, B.
3311 Powell, and M. Grundy. 2003. *Asris: The database.* *Australian Journal of Soil Research*
3312 41:1021-1036.

3313 Jonard, F., L. Weihermüller, M. Schwank, K.Z. Jadoon, H. Vereecken, and S. Lambot. 2015. Estimation
3314 of hydraulic properties of a sandy soil using ground-based active and passive microwave
3315 remote sensing. *IEEE Transaction on Geoscience and remote sensing* 53:3095 - 3109.

3316 Jones, J.E., and C.S. Woodward. 2001. Newton-krylov-multigrid solvers for large-scale, highly
3317 heterogeneous, variably saturated flow problems. *Advances in Water Resources* 24:763-774.

3318 Jones, J.W., Hoogenboom, G., Porter, C. H., Boote, K. J., Batchelor, W. D., Hunt, L. A., Wilkens, P.
3319 W., Singh, U., Gijsman, A. J., Ritchie, J. T. 2003. The dssat cropping system model. *European
3320 Journal of Agronomy* 18:235-265.

3321 Jury, W.A., D. Or, Y. Pachepsky, H. Vereecken, J.W. Hopmans, L.R. Ahuja, B.E. Clothier, K.L. Bristow,
3322 G.J. Kluitenberg, P. Moldrup, J. Šimůnek, M. Th. van Genuchten, and R. Horton. 2011.
3323 Kirkham's legacy and contemporary challenges in soil physics research. *Soil Science Society of
3324 America Journal* 75:1589-1601.

3325 Kage, H., and H. Stuetzel. 1999. Hume: An object oriented component library for generic modular
3326 modelling of dynamic systems. p. 299-300. *In* C.S.M. Donatelli, F. Villalobos, and J.M. Villar
3327 (ed.) *Modelling cropping systems.* European Society of Agronomy, Lleida, Spain.

3328 Kaiser, C., O. Franklin, U. Dieckmann, and A. Richter. 2014. Microbial community dynamics alleviate
3329 stoichiometric constraints during litter decay. *Ecology Letters* 17:680-690.

3330 Karimov, A.K., J. Šimůnek, M.A. Hanjra, M. Avliyakov, and I. Forkutsa. 2014. Effects of the shallow
3331 water table on water use of winter wheat and ecosystem health: Implications for unlocking
3332 the potential of groundwater in the fergana valley (central asia). *Agricultural Water*
3333 *Management* 131:57-69.

3334 Keating, B.A., Carberry, P. S., Hammer, G. L., Probert, M. E., Robertson, M. J., Holzworth, D., Huth, N.
3335 I., Hargreaves, J. N. G., Meinke, H., Hochman, Z., McLean, G., Verburg, K., Snow, V., Dimes, J.
3336 P., Silburn, M., Wang, E., Brown, S., Bristow, K. L., Asseng, S., Chapman S, McCown, R.
3337 L., Freebairn, D. M., Smith, C. J. 2003. An overview of apsim, a model designed for farming
3338 systems simulation. *European Journal of Agronomy* 18:267-288.

3339 Keller, T. 2005. A model for the prediction of the contact area and the distribution of vertical stress
3340 below agricultural tyres from readily available tyre parameters. *Biosystems engineering*
3341 92:85-96.

3342 Keller, T., and J. Arvidsson. 2007. Compressive properties of some swedish and danish structured
3343 agricultural soils measured in uniaxial compression tests. *European journal of soil science*
3344 58:1373-1381.

3345 Keller, T., P. Défossez, P. Weiskopf, J. Arvidson, and G. Richard. 2007. Soilflex: A model for prediction
3346 of soil stresses and soil compaction due to agricultural field traffic including a synthesis of
3347 analytical approaches. *Soil & Tillage Research* 93:391-411.

3348 Keller, T., M. Lamandé, S. Peth, M. Berli, J.Y. Delenne, W. Baumgarten, W. Rabbel, F. Radjaï, J.
3349 Rajchenbach, A.P.S. Selvadurai, and D. Or. 2013. An interdisciplinary approach towards
3350 improved understanding of soil deformation during compaction. *Soil and Tillage Research*
3351 128:61-80.

3352 Khlosi, M., W.M. Cornelis, A. Douaik, A. Hazzouri, H. Habib, and D. Gabriels. 2013. Exploration of the
3353 interaction between hydraulic and physicochemical properties of syrian soils. *Vadose Zone J.*
3354 12.

3355 Kinnell, P.I.A. 1993. Runoff as a factor influence experimentally determined interill erodibilities
3356 *Australian Journal of Soil Research* 31:333-342.

3357 Kinnell, P.I.A., and J.T. Wood. 1992. Isolating erosivity and erodibility components in erosion by rain-
3358 impacted flow. *Transactions of the Asae* 35:201-205.

3359 Kirkham, D., and W.V. Bartholomew. 1955. Equations for following nutrient transformations in soil,
3360 utilizing tracer data: li. *Soil Sci Soc Amer Proc* 19:189-192.

3361 Kodesova, R., M. Kocarek, V. Kodes, O. Drabek, J. Kozak, and K. Hejtmanova. 2011. Pesticide
3362 adsorption in relation to soil properties and soil type distribution in regional scale. *Journal of*
3363 *Hazardous Materials* 186:540-550.

3364 Koestel, J., A. Kemna, M. Javaux, A. Binley, and H. Vereecken. 2008. Quantitative imaging of solute
3365 transport in an unsaturated and undisturbed soil monolith with 3-d ert and tdr. *Water*
3366 *Resources Research* 44:n/a-n/a.

3367 Koestel, J.K., J. Moeys, and N.J. Jarvis. 2012. Meta-analysis of the effects of soil properties, site
3368 factors and experimental conditions on solute transport. *Hydrology and Earth System*
3369 *Sciences* 16:1647-1665.

3370 Koestel, J.K., T. Norgaard, N.M. Luong, A.L. Vendelboe, P. Moldrup, N.J. Jarvis, M. Lamande, B.V.
3371 Iversen, and L.W. de Jonge. 2013. Links between soil properties and steady-state solute
3372 transport through cultivated topsoil at the field scale. *Water Resources Research* 49:790-807.

3373 Kollet, S.J., and R.M. Maxwell. 2008. Capturing the influence of groundwater dynamics on land
3374 surface processes using an integrated, distributed watershed model. *Water Resources*
3375 *Research* 44.

3376 Komarov, S.A., V.L. Mironov, and A.N. Romanov. 2002. The effect of salinity on the permittivity of
3377 moist soils in the microwave band. *Journal of Communications Technology and Electronics*
3378 47:626-631.

3379 Kool, D., N. Agam, N. Lazarovitch, J.L. Heitman, T.J. Sauer, and A. Ben-Gal. 2014. A review of
3380 approaches for evapotranspiration partitioning. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* 184:56-
3381 70.

3382 Kornelsen, K.C., and P. Coulibaly. 2013. Advances in soil moisture retrieval from synthetic aperture
3383 radar and hydrological applications. *Journal of Hydrology* 476:460-489.

3384 Krabbenhoft, K. 2007. An alternative to primary variable switching in saturated-unsaturated flow
3385 computations. *Advances in Water Resources* 30:483-492.

3386 Krajewski, W., Villarini, Gabriele, Smith, James. 2010. Radar-rainfall uncertainties: Where are we after
3387 thirty years of effort? *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 91:87.

3388 Kraus, D., S. Weller, S. Klatt, E. Haas, R. Wassmann, R. Kiese, and K. Butterbach-Bahl. 2015. A new
3389 landscapedndc biogeochemical module to predict ch4 and n2o emissions from lowland rice
3390 and upland cropping systems. *Plant and Soil* 386:125-149.

3391 Krause, S., and A. Bronstert. 2007. The impact of groundwater–surface water interactions on the
3392 water balance of a mesoscale lowland river catchment in northeastern germany.
3393 *Hydrological Processes* 21:169-184.

3394 Krige, D. 1952. A statistical analysis of some of the borehole values in the orange free state goldfield.
3395 *Journal of the Chemical, Metallurgical and Mining Society of South Africa* 53:47-70.

3396 Kroes, J.G., and I. Supit. 2011. Impact analysis of drought, water excess and salinity on grass
3397 production in the netherlands using historical and future climate data. *Agriculture,
3398 Ecosystems and Environment* 144:370-381.

3399 Kros, J., E.J. Pebesma, G.J. Reinds, and P.A. Finke. 1999. Uncertainty assessment in modelling soil
3400 acidification at the european scale: A case study. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 28:366-
3401 377.

3402 Kruger, J., U. Franko, J. Fank, E. Stelzl, P. Dietrich, M. Pohle, and U. Werban. 2013. Linking geophysics
3403 and soil function modeling-an application study for biomass production. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.

3404 Kumar, S.V., R.H. Reichle, K.W. Harrison, C.D. Peters-Lidard, S. Yatheendradas, and J.A. Santanello.
3405 2012. A comparison of methods for a priori bias correction in soil moisture data assimilation.
3406 *Water Resources Research* 48.

3407 Kurtz, W., G. He, S. Kollet, M. R., H. Vereecken, and H.J. Hendricks-Franssen. 2015. Terrsysmp-pdaf
3408 (version 1.0): A modular high-performance data assimilation framework for an integrated
3409 land surface-subsurface model. *Geosci. Model Dev. Discuss.* 8:9617-9668.

3410 Kuzyakov, Y., and G. Domanski. 2000. Carbon input by plants into the soil. Review. *Journal of Plant
3411 Nutrition and Soil Science-Zeitschrift Fur Pflanzenernahrung Und Bodenkunde* 163:421-431.

3412 Kweon, G. 2012. Toward the ultimate soil survey: Sensing multiple soil and landscape properties in
3413 one pass. *Agronomy Journal* 104:1547-1557.

3414 Lado, M., A. Bar-Tal, A. Azenkot, S. Assouline, I. Ravina, Y. Erner, P. Fine, S. Dasberg, and M. Ben-Hur.
3415 2012. Changes in chemical properties of semiarid soils under long-term secondary treated
3416 wastewater irrigation. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 76:1358-1369.

3417 Lado, M., M. Ben-Hur, and S. Assouline. 2005. Effects of effluent irrigation on seal formation,
3418 infiltration, and soil loss during rainfall. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 69:1432-1439.

3419 Lafolie, F., I. Cousin, A. Mollier, V. Pot, P.-A. Maron, C. Nougier, N. Moitrier, and N. Beudez. 2015.
3420 Which benefits in the use of a modeling platform: The vsoil example. *Geophysical Research
3421 Abstracts* 17.

3422 Lagacherie, P., J.S. Bailly, P. Monestiez, and C. Gomez. 2012. Using scattered hyperspectral imagery
3423 data to map the soil properties of a region. *European Journal of Soil Science* 63:110-119.

3424 Lagacherie, P., F. Baret, J.B. Feret, J.M. Netto, and J.M. Robbez-Masson. 2008. Estimation of soil clay
3425 and calcium carbonate using laboratory, field and airborne hyperspectral measurements.
3426 *Remote Sensing of Environment* 112:825-835.

3427 Lal, R. 2014. Climate strategic soil management. *Challenges* 2014 5:43-74.

3428 Laloy, E., and J.A. Vrugt. 2012. High-dimensional posterior exploration of hydrologic models using
3429 multiple-try dream((zs)) and high-performance computing. *Water Resources Research* 48.

3430 Lamandé, M., P. Schjønning, and F.A. Tøgersen. 2007. Mechanical behaviour of an undisturbed soil
3431 subjected to loadings: Effects of load and contact area. *Soil and Tillage Research* 97:91-106.

3432 Lambot, S., E. Slob, J. Minet, K.Z. Jadoon, M. Vanclooster, and H. Vereecken. 2010. Full-waveform
3433 modelling and inversion of ground-penetrating radar data for non-invasive characterisation
3434 of soil hydrogeophysical properties. *Proximal soil sensing*.

3435 Lamorski, K., A. Bieganski, M. Ryzak, A. Sochan, C. Slawinski, and W. Stelmach. 2014. Assessment
3436 of the usefulness of particle size distribution measured by laser diffraction for soil water
3437 retention modelling. *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science* 177:803-813.

3438 Lane, L.J. 1982. Development of a procedure to estimate runoff and sediment transport in ephemeral
3439 streams. *Hydrological Sciences Journal-Journal Des Sciences Hydrologiques* 27:244-244.

3440 Lane, L.J., G.R. Foster and A.D. Nicks. 1987. Use of fundamental erosion mechanics in erosion
3441 prediction. p. Pap. 87-2540. St. Joseph MI, American Society Agricultural Engineers.

3442 Langhans, C., G. Govers, and J. Diels. 2013. Development and parameterization of an infiltration
3443 model accounting for water depth and rainfall intensity. *Hydrological Processes* 27:3777-
3444 3790.

3445 Laudone, G.M., G.P. Matthews, N.R.A. Bird, W.R. Whalley, L.M. Cardenas, and A.S. Gregory. 2011. A
3446 model to predict the effects of soil structure on denitrification and n₂o emission. *Journal of*
3447 *Hydrology* 409:283-290.

3448 Laurance, W.F., and A. Balmford. 2013. A global map for road building. *Nature* 495:308-309.

3449 Lawrence, D.M., K.W. Oleson, M.G. Flanner, P.E. Thornton, S.C. Swenson, P.J. Lawrence, X.B. Zeng,
3450 Z.L. Yang, S. Levis, K. Sakaguchi, G.B. Bonan, and A.G. Slater. 2011. Parameterization
3451 improvements and functional and structural advances in version 4 of the community land
3452 model. *Journal of Advances in Modeling Earth Systems* 3:27.

3453 Lee, H., and J.G. Liu. 2001. Analysis of topographic decorrelation in sar interferometry using ratio
3454 coherence imagery. *IEEE Transactions on Geoscience and Remote Sensing* 39:223-232.

3455 Lefelaar, P. 2012. Lintul-5 crop growth simulation model for potential, water-limited, n-limited and
3456 npk-limited conditions. Plant Production Systems Group, Wageningen University,
3457 Wageningen.

3458 Leij, F.J., T.A. Ghezzehei, and D. Or. 2002. Modeling the dynamics of the soil pore-size distribution.
3459 *Soil & Tillage Research* 64:61-78.

3460 Leij, F.J., N. Romano, M. Palladino, M.G. Schaap, and A. Coppola. 2004. Topographical attributes to
3461 predict soil hydraulic properties along a hillslope transect. *Water Resources Research*
3462 40:W02407.

3463 Leitner, D., S. Klepsch, M. Ptashnyk, A. Marchant, G.J.D. Kirk, A. Schnepf, and T. Roose. 2010. A
3464 dynamic model of nutrient uptake by root hairs. *New Phytologist* 185:792-802.

3465 Leitner, D.M., F ; Bodner, G ; Javaux, M ; Schnepf, A 2014. Impact of contrasted maize root traits at
3466 flowering on water stress tolerance - a simulation study *FIELD CROPS RESEARCH* 165:125-
3467 137.

3468 Leonard, B.P. 1991. The ultimate conservative difference scheme applied to unsteady one-
3469 dimensional advection. *Computer Methods in Applied Mechanics and Engineering* 88:17-74.

3470 Leterme, B., P. Blanc, and D. Jacques. 2014. A reactive transport model for mercury fate in soil-
3471 application to different anthropogenic pollution sources. *Environmental Science and*
3472 *Pollution Research* 21:12279-12293.

3473 Leterme, B., M. Vanclooster, T. Van der Linden, A. Tiktak, and M.D. Rounsevell. 2007. Including
3474 spatial variability in monte carlo simulations of pesticide leaching. *Environmental science &*
3475 *technology* 41:7444-7450.

3476 Levy, A. 2011. Use of treated waste water in agriculture: Impacts on the soil environment and crops.
3477 p. 306.

3478 Li, J., L. Pu, M. Han, M. Zhu, R. Zhang, and Y. Xiang. 2014. Soil salinization research in china: Advances
3479 and prospects. *Journal of Geographical Sciences* 24:943-960.

3480 Li, Z., J.Y. Yang, W.N. Smith, C.F. Drury, R.L. Lemke, B. Grant, W.T. He, and X. Li. 2015. Simulation of
3481 long-term spring wheat yields, soil organic c, n and water dynamics using dssat-csm in a
3482 semi-arid region of the canadian prairies. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems* 101:401-419.

3483 Liebig, J., Freiherr von, 1803-1873; Liebig, Justus, Freiherr von, 1803-1873. Chemistry in its
3484 application to agriculture and physiology; Playfair, Lyon Playfair, Baron, 1818-1898. 1840.
3485 Organic chemistry in its applications to agriculture and physiology. London, Taylor and
3486 Walton [etc.].

3487 Lilly, A., J.S. Bell, G. Hudson, A.J. Nolan, and W. Towers. 2010. National soil inventory of Scotland
3488 Technical Bulletin, Macaulay Institute Aberdeen.

3489 Lindstrom, F.T., R. Haque, V.H. Freed, and L. Boersma. 1967. The movement of some herbicides in
3490 soils. Linear diffusion and convection of chemicals in soils. *Environmental Science &*
3491 *Technology* 1:561-5.

3492 Liu, X.Y. 2008. Airborne lidar for DEM generation: Some critical issues. *Progress in Physical Geography*
3493 32:31-49.

3494 Lobet, G., L. Pagès, and X. Draye. 2014. A modeling approach to determine the importance of
3495 dynamic regulation of plant hydraulic conductivities on the water uptake dynamics in the
3496 soil-plant-atmosphere system. *Ecological Modelling* 290:65-75.

3497 Lobsey, C.R., R.A.V. Rossel, and A.B. McBratney. 2010. Proximal soil nutrient sensing using
3498 electrochemical sensors. *Proximal Soil Sensing*. Springer Science+Business Media.

3499 L. Ahuja (ed.) 2013. *Proc. Advances in Agricultural Systems Modeling Transdisciplinary Research, Synthesis, and Applications*. Soil Science Society of America.

3500

3501 Long, T., and D. Or. 2009. Dynamics of microbial growth and coexistence on variably saturated rough
3502 surfaces. *Microbial Ecology* 58:262-275.

3503 Luo, Q., W. Bellotti, M. Williams, and B. Bryan. 2005. Potential impact of climate change on wheat
3504 yield in south Australia. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* 132:273-285.

3505 Lynch, J.P. 2007. Roots of the second green revolution. *Australian Journal of Botany* 55:493-512.

3506 Mackelprang, R., M.P. Waldrop, K.M. DeAngelis, M.M. David, K.L. Chavarria, S.J. Blazewicz, E.M.
3507 Rubin, and J.K. Jansson. 2011. Metagenomic analysis of a permafrost microbial community
3508 reveals a rapid response to thaw. *Nature* 480:368-U120.

3509 Maeda, E.E., P.K.E. Pellikka, M. Siljander, and B.J.F. Clark. 2010. Potential impacts of agricultural
3510 expansion and climate change on soil erosion in the eastern arc mountains of Kenya.
3511 *Geomorphology* 123:279-289.

3512 Maher, K., and C.P. Chamberlain. 2014. Hydrologic regulation of chemical weathering and the
3513 geologic carbon cycle. *Science* 343:1502-1504.

3514 Mahmood, H.S., W.B. Hoogmoed, and E.J. van Henten. 2012. Sensor data fusion to predict multiple
3515 soil properties. *Precision Agriculture* 13:628-645.

3516 Manzoni, S., and A. Porporato. 2009. Soil carbon and nitrogen mineralization: Theory and models
3517 across scales. *Soil Biology & Biochemistry* 41:1355-1379.

3518 Marler, R.T., and J.S. Arora. 2004. Survey of multi-objective optimization methods for engineering.
3519 *Structural and Multidisciplinary Optimization* 26:369-395.

3520 Marschner, H., and H. Marschner. 1995. Mineral nutrition of higher plants, second edition. Mineral
3521 nutrition of higher plants, second edition.

3522 Martiny, J.B.H., B.J.M. Bohannan, J.H. Brown, R.K. Colwell, J.A. Fuhrman, J.L. Green, M.C. Horner-
3523 Devine, M. Kane, J.A. Krums, C.R. Kuske, P.J. Morin, S. Naeem, L. Ovreas, A.L. Reysenbach,
3524 V.H. Smith, and J.T. Staley. 2006. Microbial biogeography: Putting microorganisms on the
3525 map. *Nature Reviews Microbiology* 4:102-112.

3526 Maxwell, R.M. 2013. A terrain-following grid transform and preconditioner for parallel, large-scale,
3527 integrated hydrologic modeling. *Advances in Water Resources* 53:109-117.

3528 McBratney, A.B., B. Minasny, and R.V. Rossel. 2006. Spectral soil analysis and inference systems: A
3529 powerful combination for solving the soil data crisis. *Geoderma* 136:272-278.

3530 McBrayer, J.F.R., D.E. Witkamp, M. 1977. Energy flow and nutrient cycling in a cryptozoan food-web.
3531 Microfiche Report No. EDFB-1BP-73-8:74

3532 Melendez-Pastor, I., J. Navarro-Pedreno, M. Koch, and I. Gomez. 2010. Applying imaging
3533 spectroscopy techniques to map saline soils with aster images. *Geoderma* 158:55-65.

- 3534 Mendoza, C.A., R. Therrien, and E.A. Sudicky. 1991. Orthofem user`s guide, version 1.02. Waterloo
3535 Centre for Groundwater Research, Univ. of Waterloo, Waterloo, Ontario, Canada.
- 3536 Merritt, W.S., R.A. Letcher, and A.J. Jakeman. 2003. A review of erosion and sediment transport
3537 models. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 18:761-799.
- 3538 Metternicht, G., and J. Zinck. 2003. Remote sensing of soil salinity: Potentials and constraints.
3539 *Remote sensing of Environment* 85:1-20.
- 3540 Meyer, L.D., and W.C. Harmon. 1989. How row-sideslopes length and steepness affect sideslope
3541 erosion *Transactions of the Asae* 32:639-644.
- 3542 Mguidiche, A., G. Provenzano, B. Douh, S. Khila, G. Rallo, and A. Boujelben. 2015. Assessing hydrus-2d
3543 to simulate soil water content (swc) and salt accumulation under an sdi system: Application
3544 to a potato crop in a semi-arid area of central tunisia. *Irrigation and Drainage* 64:263-274.
- 3545 Minasny, B., and A.E. Hartemink. 2011. Predicting soil properties in the tropics. *Earth-Science*
3546 *Reviews* 106:52-62.
- 3547 Minasny, B., A.B. McBratney, V. Bellon-Maurel, J.M. Roger, A. Gobrecht, L. Ferrand, and S. Joalland.
3548 2011. Removing the effect of soil moisture from nir diffuse reflectance spectra for the
3549 prediction of soil organic carbon. *Geoderma* 167-68:118-124.
- 3550 Mockus, J. 1989. The bayesian approach to local optimization. p. 125-156. *Bayesian approach to*
3551 *global optimization*. Springer Netherlands.
- 3552 Moeys, J., M. Larsbo, L. Bergström, C.D. Brown, Y. Coquet, and N.J. Jarvis. 2012. Functional test of
3553 pedotransfer functions to predict water flow and solute transport with the dual-permeability
3554 model macro. *Hydrol. Earth Syst. Sci.* 16:2069-2083.
- 3555 Mohanty, B.P. 2013. Soil hydraulic property estimation using remote sensing: A review. *Vadose Zone*
3556 *J.* 12.
- 3557 Montanarella, L., P. Wilson, S. Cox, A. McBratney, S. Ahamed, R. MacMillan, D. Jacquier, and J.
3558 Fortner. 2010. Developing soilml as a global standard for the collation and transfer of soil
3559 data and information. *Geophysical research abstracts* 12, jrc56629, copernicus. *Geophysical*
3560 *Research Abstracts*. Copernicus.
- 3561 Montzka, C., J.P. Grant, H. Moradkhani, H.-J.H. Franssen, L. Weihermueller, M. Drusch, and H.
3562 Vereecken. 2013. Estimation of radiative transfer parameters from l-band passive microwave
3563 brightness temperatures using advanced data assimilation. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.
- 3564 Montzka, C., H. Moradkhani, L. Weihermuller, H.J.H. Franssen, M. Canty, and H. Vereecken. 2011.
3565 Hydraulic parameter estimation by remotely-sensed top soil moisture observations with the
3566 particle filter. *Journal of Hydrology* 399:410-421.
- 3567 Montzka, C., V. Pauwels, H.-J.H. Franssen, X. Han, and H. Vereecken. 2012. Multivariate and
3568 multiscale data assimilation in terrestrial systems: A review. *Sensors* 12:16291-16333.
- 3569 Moolenaar, S.W., and P. Beltrami. 1998. Heavy metal balances of an italian soil as affected by sewage
3570 sludge and bordeaux mixture applications. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 27:828-835.
- 3571 Moolenaar, S.W., T.M. Lexmond, and S.E. van der Zee. 1997. Calculating heavy metal accumulation in
3572 soil: A comparison of methods illustrated by a case-study on compost application.
3573 *Agriculture, ecosystems & environment* 66:71-82.
- 3574 Moore, C., and J. Doherty. 2005. Role of the calibration process in reducing model predictive error.
3575 *Water Resources Research* 41.
- 3576 More, J.J. 2006. The levenberg-marquardt algorithm: Implementation and theory. p. 105-116.
3577 *Numerical analysis*.
- 3578 Moreira, M.Z., L.D.L. Sternberg, L.A. Martinelli, R.L. Victoria, E.M. Barbosa, L.C.M. Bonates, and D.C.
3579 Nepstad. 1997. Contribution of transpiration to forest ambient vapour based on isotopic
3580 measurements. *Global Change Biology* 3:439-450.
- 3581 Mu, Q., M. Zhao, and S.W. Running. 2011. Improvements to a modis global terrestrial
3582 evapotranspiration algorithm. *Remote Sensing of Environment* 115:1781-1800.
- 3583 Mulder, V.L., S. de Bruin, M.E. Schaepman, and T.R. Mayr. 2011. The use of remote sensing in soil and
3584 terrain mapping - a review. *Geoderma* 162:1-19.

3585 Nachtergaele, F., H. Van Velthuizen, L. Verelst, N. Batjes, K. Dijkshoorn, V. Van Engelen, G. Fischer, A.
3586 Jones, L. Montanarella, M. Petri, and S. Prieler. 2008. Harmonized world soil database. Food
3587 and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

3588 Nawaz, M.F., G. Bourrie, and F. Trolard. 2013. Soil compaction impact and modelling. A review.
3589 *Agronomy for Sustainable Development* 33:291-309.

3590 Neal, J.H. 1938. The effect of the degree of slope and rainfall characteristics on runoff and soil
3591 erosion. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 2:525-532.

3592 Nearing, M.A., L.J. Lane, E.E. Alberts, and J.M. Laflen. 1990. Prediction technology for soil-erosion by
3593 water-status and research needs. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 54:1702-1711.

3594 Nedkov, S., and B. Burkhard. 2012. Flood regulating ecosystem services—mapping supply and
3595 demand, in the etropole municipality, bulgaria. *Ecological Indicators* 21:67-79.

3596 Nelder, A., and R. Mead. 1965. A simplex method for function minimization. *Computer Journal*
3597 7:308–313.

3598 Nelson, E., G. Mendoza, J. Regetz, S. Polasky, H. Tallis, D.R. Cameron, K.M.A. Chan, G.C. Daily, J.
3599 Goldstein, P.M. Kareiva, E. Lonsdorf, R. Naidoo, T.H. Ricketts, and M.R. Shaw. 2009. Modeling
3600 multiple ecosystem services, biodiversity conservation, commodity production, and tradeoffs
3601 at landscape scales. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment* 7:4-11.

3602 Nendel, C., Berg, M., Kersebaum, K. C., Mirschel, W., Specka, X., Wegehenkel, M., Wenkel, K.
3603 O., Wieland, R. 2011. The monica model: Testing predictability for crop growth, soil moisture
3604 and nitrogen dynamics. *Ecological Modelling* 222:1614-1625.

3605 Neuman, S.P. 2003. Maximum likelihood bayesian averaging of uncertain model predictions.
3606 *Stochastic Environmental Research and Risk Assessment* 17:291-305.

3607 Neumann, L.E., J. Simunek, and F.J. Cook. 2011. Implementation of quadratic upstream interpolation
3608 schemes for solute transport into hydrus-1d. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 26:1298-
3609 1308.

3610 Nippert, J.B., J.J. Butler, G.J. Kluitenberg, D.O. Whittemore, D. Arnold, S.E. Spal, and J.K. Ward. 2010.
3611 Patterns of tamarix water use during a record drought. *Oecologia* 162:283-292.

3612 Njoku, E.G., and D. Entekhabi. 1996. Passive microwave remote sensing of soil moisture. *Journal of*
3613 *Hydrology* 184:101-129.

3614 Nüsch, A.K., P. Dietrich, U. Werban, and T. Behrens. 2010. Acquisition and reliability of geophysical
3615 data in soil science p. 21-24. 19th World Congress of Soil Science.

3616 Nyhan, J.W. 2005. A seven-year water balance study of an evapotranspiration landfill cover varying in
3617 slope for semiarid regions. *Vadose Zone J.* 4:466-480.

3618 Obst, C. 2015. Account for soil as natural capital. *Nature* 527:165-165.

3619 Ochsner, T.E., M.H. Cosh, R.H. Cuenca, W.A. Dorigo, C.S. Draper, Y. Hagimoto, Y.H. Kerr, K.M. Larson,
3620 E.G. Njoku, E.E. Small, and M. Zreda. 2013. State of the art in large-scale soil moisture
3621 monitoring. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 77:1888-1919.

3622 Odeh, I.O.A., A.B. McBratney, and D.J. Chittleborough. 1994. Spatial prediction of soil properties from
3623 landform attributes derived from a digital elevation model. *Geoderma* 63:197-214.

3624 Odgers, N.P., Z. Libohova, and J.A. Thompson. 2012. Equal-area spline functions applied to a legacy
3625 soil database to create weighted-means maps of soil organic carbon at a continental scale
3626 *GEODERMA* 189:153-163.

3627 Oleson, K.W., D.M. Lawrence, G.B. Bonan, B. Drewniak, M. Huang, C.D. Koven, S. Levis, F. Li, W.J.
3628 Riley, Z.M. Subin, S.C. Swenson, P.E. Thornton, A. Bozbiyik, R. Fisher, C.L. Heald, E. Kluzek,
3629 J.F. Lamarque, P. Lawrence, J., L.R. Leung, W. Lipscomb, S. Muszala, D.M. Ricciuto, W. Sacks,
3630 Y. Sun, J. Tang, and Z.L. Yang. 2013. Technical description of version 4.5 of the community
3631 land model (clm) p. 434. NATIONAL CENTER FOR ATMOSPHERIC RESEARCH, P. O. Box 3000,
3632 BOULDER, COLORADO 80307-3000.

3633 Opolot, Y.Y.Y., and P.A. Finke. 2014. Modeling soil genesis at pedon and landscape scales:
3634 Achievements and problems. *Quaternary International* 376:34-46.

3635 Or, D., P. Lehmann, E. Shahraeeni, and N. Shokri. 2013. Advances in soil evaporation physics—a
3636 review. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.

3637 Or, D., F.J. Leij, V. Snyder, and T.A. Ghezzehei. 2000. Stochastic model for posttillage soil pore space
3638 evolution. *Water Resources Research* 36:1641-1652.

3639 Or, D., S. Phutane, and A. Dechesne. 2007. Extracellular polymeric substances affecting pore-scale
3640 hydrologic conditions for bacterial activity in unsaturated soils. *Vadose Zone J.* 6:298-305.

3641 Oster, J.D., J. Letey, P. Vaughan, L. Wu, and M. Qadir. 2012. Comparison of transient state models
3642 that include salinity and matric stress effects on plant yield. *Agricultural Water Management*
3643 103:167-175.

3644 Ottoni, M., M. Lopes-Assad, Y. Pachepsky, and O. Rotunno Filho. 2014. A hydrophysical database to
3645 develop pedotransfer functions for brazilian soils: Challenges and perspectives. p. 467-494. *In*
3646 W.G. Teixeira, M.B. Ceddia, M.V. Ottoni, and G.K. Donnagema (ed.) *Application of soil physics*
3647 *in environmental analyses*. Springer International Publishing.

3648 Pachepsky, Y.A., A.K. Guber, A.M. Yakirevich, L. McKee, R.E. Cady, and T.J. Nicholson. 2014. Scaling
3649 and pedotransfer in numerical simulations of flow and transport in soils. *Vadose Zone J.* 13.

3650 Pagani, M., K. Caldeira, R. Berner, and D.J. Beerling. 2009. The role of terrestrial plants in limiting
3651 atmospheric co2 decline over the past 24 million years. *Nature* 460:85-88.

3652 Pan, F., Y. Pachepsky, D. Jacques, A. Guber, and R.L. Hill. 2012. Data assimilation with soil water
3653 content sensors and pedotransfer functions in soil water flow modeling. *Soil Science Society*
3654 *of America Journal* 76:829-844.

3655 Panagos, P., K. Meusburger, C. Alewell, and L. Montanarella. 2012. Soil erodibility estimation using
3656 lucas point survey data of europe. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 30:143-145.

3657 Panciera, R., J.P. Walker, and O. Merlin. 2009. Improved understanding of soil surface roughness
3658 parameterization for l-band passive microwave soil moisture retrieval. *Ieee Geoscience and*
3659 *Remote Sensing Letters* 6:625-629.

3660 Paniconi, C., and E.F. Wood. 1993. A detailed model for simulation of catchment scale subsurface
3661 hydrologic processes. *Water Resources Research* 29:1601-1620.

3662 Parton, W., J. Scurlock, D. Ojima, T. Gilmanov, R. Scholes, D.S. Schimel, T. Kirchner, J.C. Menaut, T.
3663 Seastedt, and E. Garcia Moya. 1993. Observations and modeling of biomass and soil organic
3664 matter dynamics for the grassland biome worldwide. *Global biogeochemical cycles* 7:785-
3665 809.

3666 Parton, W.J., M. Hartman, D. Ojima, and D. Schimel. 1998. Daycent and its land surface submodel:
3667 Description and testing. *Global and Planetary Change* 19:35-48.

3668 Parton, W.J., McKeown, B., Kirchner, V., Ojima, D.S. 1992. Century users manual. NREL Publication,
3669 Fort Collins, Colorado, USA.

3670 Parton, W.J., J.W.B. Stewart, and C.V. Cole. 1988. Dynamics of c,n,p and s in grassland soils- a model.
3671 *Biogeochemistry* 5:109-131.

3672 Pasetto, D., G.-Y. Niu, L. Pangle, C. Paniconi, M. Putti, and P. Troch. 2015. Impact of sensor failure on
3673 the observability of flow dynamics at the biosphere 2 leo hillslopes. *Advances in Water*
3674 *Resources*.

3675 Patten, B.C. 1972. Simulation of shortgrass prairie ecosystem *Simulation* 19:177-186.

3676 Peckham, S.D., E.W.H. Hutton, and B. Norris. 2013. A component-based approach to integrated
3677 modeling in the geosciences: The design of csdms. *Computers & Geosciences* 53:3-12.

3678 Pedrero, F., I. Kalavrouziotis, J. Jose Alarcon, P. Koukoulakis, and T. Asano. 2010. Use of treated
3679 municipal wastewater in irrigated agriculture-review of some practices in spain and greece.
3680 *Agricultural Water Management* 97:1233-1241.

3681 Pelletier, J.D. 2012. Fluvial and slope-wash erosion of soil-mantled landscapes: Detachment- or
3682 transport-limited? *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 37:37-51.

3683 Pequeno, D.N.L., C.G.S. Pedreira, and K.J. Boote. 2014. Simulating forage production of marandu
3684 palisade grass (*brachiaria brizantha*) with the cropgro-perennial forage model. *Crop &*
3685 *Pasture Science* 65:1335-1348.

3686 Perego, A., A. Basile, A. Bonfante, R. De Mascellis, F. Terribile, S. Brenna, and M. Acutis. 2012. Nitrate
3687 leaching under maize cropping systems in po valley (italy). *Agriculture, Ecosystems and*
3688 *Environment* 147:57-65.

- 3689 Peth, S., R. Horn, O. Fazekas, and B.G. Richards. 2006. Heavy soil loading and its consequence for soil
3690 structure, strength, and deformation of arable soils. *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil*
3691 *Science* 169:775-783.
- 3692 Peth, S., J. Nellesen, G. Fischer, and R. Horn. 2010. Non-invasive 3d analysis of local soil deformation
3693 under mechanical and hydraulic stresses by µct and digital image correlation. *Soil and Tillage*
3694 *Research* 111:3-18.
- 3695 Piedallu, C., J.C. Gegout, A. Bruand, and I. Seynave. 2011. Mapping soil water holding capacity over
3696 large areas to predict potential production of forest stands. *Geoderma* 160:355-366.
- 3697 Pimental, D., and D.L. Sparks. 2000. Soil as an endangered ecosystem. *Bioscience* 50:947-947.
- 3698 Pitman, M.G., and A. Lauchli. 2002. Global impact of salinity and agricultural ecosystems. *Salinity:*
3699 *Environment - plants - molecules*. Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- 3700 Poesen, J.W.A., and M.A. Nearing. 1993. Soil surface sealing and crusting. CATENA VERLAG,
3701 Reiskirchen.
- 3702 Pollacco, J.A., and B.P. Mohanty. 2012. Uncertainties of water fluxes in soil–vegetation–atmosphere
3703 transfer models: Inverting surface soil moisture and evapotranspiration retrieved from
3704 remote sensing. *Vadose Zone J.* 11.
- 3705 Powell, M.J.D. 1964. An efficient method for finding the minimum of a function of several variables
3706 without calculating derivatives *The Computer Journal* 7:155-162.
- 3707 Priesack, E., A. Berkenkamp, S. Gayler, H.P. Hartmann, and C. Loos. 2008. Development and
3708 application of agro-ecosystem models. *Perspectives for Agroecosystem Management:*
3709 *Balancing Environmental and Socio-Economic Demands*:329-349.
- 3710 Priyabrata Santra, R.N.S., Bhabani Sankar Das, Ravindra Nath Samal, Ajit Kumar Pattanaik, Vinod
3711 Kumar Gupta. 2009. Estimation of soil hydraulic properties using proximal spectral
3712 reflectance in visible, near-infrared, and shortwave-infrared (vis–nir–swir) region *Geoderma*
3713 152:338-349.
- 3714 Prosser, J.I., B.J.M. Bohannan, T.P. Curtis, R.J. Ellis, M.K. Firestone, R.P. Freckleton, J.L. Green, L.E.
3715 Green, K. Killham, J.J. Lennon, A.M. Osborn, M. Solan, C.J. van der Gast, and J.P.W. Young.
3716 2007. The role of ecological theory in microbial ecology. *Nat Rev Micro* 5:384-392.
- 3717 Prosser, J.I., and G.W. Nicol. 2008. Relative contributions of archaea and bacteria to aerobic
3718 ammonia oxidation in the environment. *Environmental Microbiology* 10:2931-2941.
- 3719 Qadir, M., D. Wichelns, L. Raschid-Sally, P.S. Minhas, P. Drechsel, A. Bahri, P.G. McCornick, R.
3720 Abaidoo, F. Attia, and S. El-Guindy. 2007. Agricultural use of marginal-quality water:
3721 Opportunities and challenges.
- 3722 Qian, P., and J.J. Schoenau. 2002. Practical applications of ion exchange resins in agricultural and
3723 environmental soil research. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science* 82:9-21.
- 3724 Quinton, J.N., G. Govers, K. Van Oost, and R.D. Bardgett. 2010. The impact of agricultural soil erosion
3725 on biogeochemical cycling. *Nature Geoscience* 3:311-314.
- 3726 Ragab, R. 2000. An integrated modelling approach for irrigation water management using saline and
3727 non-saline water: The saltmed model. p. 129-138. *International Symposium on Techniques to*
3728 *Control Salination for Horticultural Productivity* 573.
- 3729 Ragab, R. 2002. An integrated modelling approach for irrigation water management using saline and
3730 non-saline water: The saltmed model. p. 129-138. *In* U. Aksoy, D. Anac, S. Anacet al (ed.)
3731 *Proceedings of the international symposium on techniques to control salination for*
3732 *horticultural productivity*.
- 3733 Ramos, T., J. Šimůnek, M. Gonçalves, J. Martins, A. Prazeres, and L. Pereira. 2012. Two-dimensional
3734 modeling of water and nitrogen fate from sweet sorghum irrigated with fresh and blended
3735 saline waters. *Agricultural water management* 111:87-104.
- 3736 Rasmussen, J., H. Madsen, K.H. Jensen, and J.C. Refsgaard. 2015. Data assimilation in integrated
3737 hydrological modeling using ensemble kalman filtering: Evaluating the effect of ensemble
3738 size and localization on filter performance. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences* 19:2999-
3739 3013.

3740 Rastetter, E.B. 2011. Modeling coupled biogeochemical cycles. *Frontiers in Ecology and the*
3741 *Environment* 9:68-73.

3742 Rathfelder, K., and L.M. Abriola. 1994. Mass conservative numerical-solutions of the head-based
3743 richards equation. *Water Resources Research* 30:2579-2586.

3744 Ratjen, A.M. 2012. Refined n-fertilization of winter wheat: A model supported approach combining
3745 statistical and mechanistic components. Phd thesis. PhD University of Kiel, Kiel.

3746 Rawlins, B.G., R.M. Lark, and R. Webster. 2007. Understanding airborne radiometric survey signals
3747 across part of eastern england. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 32:1503-1515.

3748 Reed, P.M., D. Hadka, J.D. Herman, J.R. Kasprzyk, and J.B. Kollat. 2013. Evolutionary multiobjective
3749 optimization in water resources: The past, present, and future. *Advances in Water Resources*
3750 51:438-456.

3751 Reichle, R.H., J.P. Walker, R.D. Koster, and P.R. Houser. 2002. Extended versus ensemble kalman
3752 filtering for land data assimilation. *Journal of Hydrometeorology* 3:728-740.

3753 Ren, D., L.M. Leslie, and D.J. Karoly. 2008. Sensitivity of an ecological model to soil moisture
3754 simulations from two different hydrological models. *Meteorology and Atmospheric Physics*
3755 100:87-99.

3756 Richards, B.G., T. Baumgartl, R. Horn, and W. Gräsle. 1997. Modelling the effects of repeated wheel
3757 loads on soil profiles. *International Agrophysics* 11:177-187.

3758 Richardson, A., J.-M. Barea, A. McNeill, and C. Prigent-Combaret. 2009. Acquisition of phosphorus
3759 and nitrogen in the rhizosphere and plant growth promotion by microorganisms. *Plant and*
3760 *Soil* 321:305-339.

3761 Ritsema, C.J., L.W. Dekker, J.M.H. Hendrickx, and W. Hamminga. 1993. Preferential flow mechanism
3762 in a water repellent sandy soil. *Water Resources Research* 29:2183-2193.

3763 Robertson, M.J., P.S. Carberry, N.I. Huth, J.E. Turpin, M.E. Probert, P.L. Poulton, M. Bell, G.C. Wright,
3764 S.J. Yeates, and R.B. Brinsmead. 2002. Simulation of growth and development of diverse
3765 legume species in apsim. *Australian Journal of Agricultural Research* 53:429-446.

3766 Robinson, D.A., I. Fraser, E.J. Dominati, B. Davidsdottir, J.O.G. Jonsson, L. Jones, S.B. Jones, M. Tuller,
3767 I. Lebron, K.L. Bristow, D.M. Souza, S. Banwart, and B.E. Clothier. 2014. On the value of soil
3768 resources in the context of natural capital and ecosystem service delivery. *Soil Science*
3769 *Society of America Journal* 78:685-700.

3770 Robinson, D.A., I. Lebron, and H. Vereecken. 2009. On the definition of the natural capital of soils: A
3771 framework for description, evaluation, and monitoring. *Soil Science Society of America*
3772 *Journal* 73:1904-1911.

3773 Rodionov, A., S. Pätzold, G. Welp, L. Damerow, and W. Amelung. 2014. Sensing of soil organic carbon
3774 using visible and near-infrared spectroscopy at variable moisture and surface roughness. *Soil*
3775 *Science Society of America Journal* 78:949-957.

3776 Romano, N. 2004. Spatial structure of ptf estimates. *Development of Pedotransfer Functions in Soil*
3777 *Hydrology* 30:295-319.

3778 Romano, N., M. Palladino, and G.B. Chirico. 2011. Parameterization of a bucket model for soil-
3779 vegetation-atmosphere modeling under seasonal climatic regimes. *Hydrology and Earth*
3780 *System Sciences* 15:3877-3893.

3781 Römken, M.J.M., K. Helming, and S.N. Prasad. 2001. Soil erosion under different rainfall intensities,
3782 surface roughness, and soil water regimes. *Catena* 46:103-123.

3783 Roose, T., and A.C. Fowler. 2004. A model for water uptake by plant roots. *Journal of Theoretical*
3784 *Biology* 228:155-171.

3785 Roose, T., A.C. Fowler, and P.R. Darrah. 2001. A mathematical model of plant nutrient uptake. *Journal*
3786 *of Mathematical Biology* 42:347-360.

3787 Roose, T., and A. Schnepf. 2008. Mathematical models of plant-soil interaction. *Philosophical*
3788 *Transactions of the Royal Society a-Mathematical Physical and Engineering Sciences*
3789 366:4597-4611.

3790 Rose, C.W. 1960. Soil detachment caused by rainfall. *Soil Sci* 89:28-35.

3791 Rosenberger, K.H. 2009. Performance assessment for the f-tank farm at savannah river site. p. 5. WM
3792 2009 Conference. Waste Management for the Nuclear Renaissance; Phoenix, AZ (United
3793 States); 1-5 Mar 2009; Available from: WM Symposia, 1628 E. Southern Avenue, Suite 9 -
3794 332, Tempe, AZ 85282 (US);.

3795 Rosenzweig, C., J.W. Jones, J.L. Hatfield, A.C. Ruane, K.J. Boote, P. Thorburne, J.M. Antle, G.C. Nelson,
3796 C. Porter, S. Janssen, S. Asseng, B. Basso, F. Ewert, D. Wallach, G. Baigorria, and J.M. Winter.
3797 2013. The agricultural model intercomparison and improvement project (agmip): Protocols
3798 and pilot studies. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* 170:166-182.

3799 Ross, P., and K. Smettem. 2000. A simple treatment of physical nonequilibrium water flow in soils.
3800 *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 64:1926-1930.

3801 Rossel, R.A.V., V.I. Adamchuk, K.A. Sudduth, N.J. McKenzie, and C. Lobsey. 2011. Proximal soil
3802 sensing: An effective approach for soil measurements in space and time. p. 237-282. *In* D.L.
3803 Sparks (ed.) *Advances in agronomy*, vol 113.

3804 Rossel, R.A.V., and T. Behrens. 2010. Using data mining to model and interpret soil diffuse reflectance
3805 spectra. *Geoderma* 158:46-54.

3806 Rossel, R.A.V., and A.B. McBratney. 1998. Laboratory evaluation of a proximal sensing technique for
3807 simultaneous measurement of soil clay and water content. *Geoderma* 85:19-39.

3808 Rosswall, T.P., K. 1984. Cycling of nitrogen in modern agricultural systems. *PLANT AND SOIL* 76:3-21.

3809 Roth, K. 1995. Steady-state flow in an unsaturated, 2-dimensional, macroscopically homogeneous,
3810 miller-similar medium. *Water Resources Research* 31:2127-2140.

3811 Rothfuss, Y., P. Biron, I. Braud, L. Canale, J.L. Durand, J.P. Gaudet, P. Richard, M. Vauclin, and T.
3812 Bariac. 2010. Partitioning evapotranspiration fluxes into soil evaporation and plant
3813 transpiration using water stable isotopes under controlled conditions. *Hydrological Processes*
3814 24:3177-3194.

3815 Rothfuss, Y., I. Braud, N. Le Moine, P. Biron, J.L. Durand, M. Vauclin, and T. Bariac. 2012. Factors
3816 controlling the isotopic partitioning between soil evaporation and plant transpiration:
3817 Assessment using a multi-objective calibration of sispac-isotope under controlled conditions.
3818 *Journal of Hydrology* 442:75-88.

3819 Rothfuss, Y., S. Merz, J. Vanderborcht, N. Hermes, N. Weuten, A. Pohlmeier, H. Vereecken, and N.
3820 Brüggemann. 2015. Long-term and high frequency non-destructive monitoring of water
3821 stable isotope profiles in an evaporating soil column. *Hydrol. Earth Syst. Sci. Discuss.*
3822 12:3893-3918.

3823 Rothfuss, Y., H. Vereecken, and N. Brüggemann. 2013. Monitoring water stable isotopic composition
3824 in soils using gas-permeable tubing and infrared laser absorption spectroscopy. *Water*
3825 *Resources Research* 49:3747-3755.

3826 Rowe, E.C., B.A. Emmett, S.M. Smart, and Z.L. Frogbrook. 2011. A new net mineralizable nitrogen
3827 assay improves predictions of floristic composition. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 22:251-
3828 261.

3829 Rowe, E.C., S.M. Smart, V.H. Kennedy, B.A. Emmett, and C.D. Evans. 2008. Nitrogen deposition
3830 increases the acquisition of phosphorus and potassium by heather *Calluna vulgaris*.
3831 *Environmental Pollution* 155:201-207.

3832 Rowe, E.C., M. van Noordwijk, D. Suprayogo, K. Hairiah, K.E. Giller, and G. Cadisch. 2001. Root
3833 distributions partially explain N-15 uptake patterns in gliricidia and peltophorum hedgerow
3834 intercropping systems. *Plant and Soil* 235:167-179.

3835 Rubin, J., and R. Steinhardt. 1963. Soil water relations during rainfall infiltration: I. Theory. *Soil*
3836 *Science Society of America Proceedings* 27.

3837 Rudolph, S., van der Kruk, J., von Hebel, C., Ali, M., Herbst, M., Montzka, C., Pätzold, S., Robinson, D.,
3838 Vereecken, H. 2014. Linking satellite derived lai patterns with subsoil heterogeneity using
3839 large-scale ground-based electromagnetic induction measurements. *Geoderma*:241-242, 262
3840 - 271.

3841 Russell, J.S. 1964. Mathematical expression of seasonal changes in soil organic matter. *Nature*
3842 204:161-162.

3843 Russell, J.S. 1975. Mathematical treatment of effect of cropping system on soil organic nitrogen in 2
3844 long-term sequential experiments. *Soil Science* 120:37-44.

3845 Russo, D., and D. Bakker. 1987. Crop-water production-functions for sweet corn and cotton irrigated
3846 with saline waters. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 51:1554-1562.

3847 Russo, D., A. Laufer, A. Silber, and S. Assouline. 2009. Water uptake, active root volume, and solute
3848 leaching under drip irrigation: A numerical study. *Water Resources Research* 45.

3849 Saey, T., M. Van Meirvenne, H. Vermeersch, N. Ameloot, and L. Cockx. 2009. A pedotransfer function
3850 to evaluate the soil profile textural heterogeneity using proximally sensed apparent electrical
3851 conductivity. *Geoderma* 150:389-395.

3852 Samouëlian, A., I. Cousin, A. Tabbagh, A. Bruand, and G. Richard. 2005. Electrical resistivity survey in
3853 soil science: A review. *Soil and Tillage Research* 83:173-193.

3854 Sankey, J.B., D.J. Brown, M.L. Bernard, and R.L. Lawrence. 2008. Comparing local vs. Global visible
3855 and near-infrared (visnir) diffuse reflectance spectroscopy (drs) calibrations for the
3856 prediction of soil clay, organic c and inorganic c. *Geoderma* 148:149-158.

3857 Sauer, D., Schulli-Maurer, I. Sperstad, R., Sorensen, R., Stahr, K. 2009. Albeluvisol development with
3858 time in loamy marine sediments of southern norway. *Quaternary International* 209:31-43.

3859 Savabi, M.R., B. Hebel, D. Flanagan, and B. Engel. 1995. Application of wepp and gis-grass to a small
3860 watershed in indiana. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation* 50:477.

3861 Scanlon, B.R., M. Christman, R.C. Reedy, I. Porro, J. Simunek, and G.N. Flerchinger. 2002. Intercode
3862 comparisons for simulating water balance of surficial sediments in semiarid regions. *Water
3863 Resources Research* 38.

3864 Schagner, J.P., L. Brander, J. Maes, and V. Hartje. 2013. Mapping ecosystem services' values: Current
3865 practice and future prospects. *Ecosystem Services* 4:33-46.

3866 Scheierling, S.M., C. Bartone, D.D. Mara, and P. Drechsel. 2010. Improving wastewater use in
3867 agriculture: An emerging priority. *World Bank Policy Research Working Paper Series*, no. WPS
3868 5412. Washington, DC: World Bank.
3869 [http://documents.worldbank.org/curated/en/2010/09/12736304/improving-wastewater-
3870 use-agriculture-emerging-priority](http://documents.worldbank.org/curated/en/2010/09/12736304/improving-wastewater-use-agriculture-emerging-priority)

3871 Schimel, D., R. Pavlick, J.B. Fisher, G.P. Asner, S. Saatchi, P. Townsend, C. Miller, C. Frankenberg, K.
3872 Hibbard, and P. Cox. 2015. Observing terrestrial ecosystems and the carbon cycle from space.
3873 *Global change biology* 21:1762-1776.

3874 Schimel, J.P., and J. Bennett. 2004. Nitrogen mineralization: Challenges of a changing paradigm.
3875 *Ecology* 85:591-602.

3876 Schimel, J.P., and S.M. Schaeffer. 2012. Microbial control over carbon cycling in soil. *Frontiers in
3877 Microbiology* 3.

3878 Schirrmann, M., R. Gebbers, and E. Kramer. 2013. Performance of automated near-infrared
3879 reflectance spectrometry for continuous in situ mapping of soil fertility at field scale. *Vadose
3880 Zone J.* 12.

3881 Schloss, P.D., and J. Handelsman. 2006. Toward a census of bacteria in soil. *PLoS Computational
3882 Biology* 2:786-793.

3883 Schmutge, T.J., W.P. Kustas, J.C. Ritchie, T.J. Jackson, and A. Rango. 2002. Remote sensing in
3884 hydrology. *Advances in water resources* 25:1367-1385.

3885 Schnepf, A., D. Leitner, and S. Klepsch. 2012. Modeling phosphorus uptake by a growing and exuding
3886 root system. *Vadose Zone J.* 11.

3887 Schnepf, A., T. Roose, and P. Schweiger. 2008a. Growth model for arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi.
3888 *Journal of the Royal Society Interface* 5:773-784.

3889 Schnepf, A., T. Roose, and P. Schweiger. 2008b. Impact of growth and uptake patterns of arbuscular
3890 mycorrhizal fungi on plant phosphorus uptake - a modelling study. *Plant and Soil* 312:85-99.

3891 Schöniger, W.T., Samaniego L, Nowak W. 2014. Model selection on solid ground: Rigorous
3892 comparison of nine ways to evaluate bayesian model evidence. *Water Resour Res.*

3893 Schoups, G., J. Hopmans, and K. Tanji. 2006. Evaluation of model complexity and space–time
3894 resolution on the prediction of long-term soil salinity dynamics, western san joaquin valley,
3895 california. *Hydrological processes* 20:2647-2668.

3896 Schoups, G., J.W. Hopmans, C.A. Young, J.A. Vrugt, and W.W. Wallender. 2005. Multi-criteria
3897 optimization of a regional spatially-distributed subsurface water flow model. *Journal of*
3898 *Hydrology* 311:20-48.

3899 Schroder, T.J., W.H. van Riemsdijk, S. van der Zee, and J.P.M. Vink. 2008. Monitoring and modelling of
3900 the solid-solution partitioning of metals and as in a river floodplain redox sequence. *Applied*
3901 *Geochemistry* 23:2350-2363.

3902 Schuur, E.A.G., A.D. McGuire, C. Schadel, G. Grosse, J.W. Harden, D.J. Hayes, G. Hugelius, C.D. Koven,
3903 P. Kuhry, D.M. Lawrence, S.M. Natali, D. Olefeldt, V.E. Romanovsky, K. Schaefer, M.R.
3904 Turetsky, C.C. Treat, and J.E. Vonk. 2015. Climate change and the permafrost carbon
3905 feedback. *Nature* 520:171-179.

3906 Schwarzel, K., M. Renger, R. Sauerbrey, and G. Wessolek. 2002. Soil physical characteristics of peat
3907 soils. *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science-Zeitschrift Fur Pflanzenernahrung Und*
3908 *Bodenkunde* 165:479-486.

3909 Sellers, P.J., R.E. Dickinson, D.A. Randall, A.K. Betts, F.G. Hall, J.A. Berry, G.J. Collatz, A.S. Denning,
3910 H.A. Mooney, C.A. Nobre, N. Sato, C.B. Field, and A. Henderson-Sellers. 1997. Modeling the
3911 exchanges of energy, water, and carbon between continents and the atmosphere. *Science*
3912 275:502-509.

3913 Sellers, P.J., Y. Mintz, Y.C. Sud, and A. Dalcher. 1986. A simple biosphere model (sib) for use within
3914 general circulation models. *J. Atmos. Sci.* 43:505-531.

3915 Seneviratne, S.I., M.G. Donat, B. Mueller, and L.V. Alexander. 2014. No pause in the increase of hot
3916 temperature extremes. *Nature Clim. Change* 4:161-163.

3917 Shani, U., A. Ben-Gal, and L.M. Dudley. 2005. Environmental implications of adopting a dominant
3918 factor approach to salinity management. *Journal of environmental quality* 34:1455-1460.

3919 Shani, U., A. Ben-Gal, E. Tripler, and L.M. Dudley. 2007. Plant response to the soil environment: An
3920 analytical model integrating yield, water, soil type, and salinity. *Water Resources Research*
3921 43.

3922 Shani, U., and L.M. Dudley. 2001. Field studies of crop response to water and salt stress. *Soil Science*
3923 *Society of America Journal* 65:1522-1528.

3924 Sheffield, J., G. Goteti, and E.F. Wood. 2006. Development of a 50-year high-resolution global dataset
3925 of meteorological forcings for land surface modeling. *Journal of Climate* 19:3088-3111.

3926 Shen, C.P., J. Niu, and K. Fang. 2014. Quantifying the effects of data integration algorithms on the
3927 outcomes of a subsurface-land surface processes model. *Environmental Modelling &*
3928 *Software* 59:146-161.

3929 Sheng, D., D.G. Fredlund, and A. Gens. 2008. A new modelling approach for unsaturated soils using
3930 independent stress variables. *Canadian Geotechnical Journal* 45:511-534.

3931 Sherrouse, B.C., J.M. Clement, and D.J. Semmens. 2011. A gis application for assessing, mapping, and
3932 quantifying the social values of ecosystem services. *Applied Geography* 31:748-760.

3933 Shi, J., Y. Du, J. Du, L. Jiang, L. Chai, K. Mao, P. Xu, W. Ni, C. Xiong, Q. Liu, C. Liu, P. Guo, Q. Cui, Y. Li, J.
3934 Chen, A. Wang, H. Luo, and Y. Wang. 2012. Progresses on microwave remote sensing of land
3935 surface parameters. *Science China-Earth Sciences* 55:1052-1078.

3936 Shi, J.C., J. Wang, A.Y. Hsu, P.E. Oneill, and E.T. Engman. 1997. Estimation of bare surface soil
3937 moisture and surface roughness parameter using l-band sar image data. *IEEE Transactions on*
3938 *Geoscience and Remote Sensing* 35:1254-1266.

3939 Shi, Y., K.J. Davis, F. Zhang, C.J. Duffy, and X. Yu. 2014. Parameter estimation of a physically based
3940 land surface hydrologic model using the ensemble kalman filter : A synthetic experiment.
3941 *Water Resources Research* 50:706-724.

3942 Shoba, S., I. Alyabina, and V. Kolesnikova. 2010. Soil-geographic database of russia:Database
3943 management system soil-db. p. 28-29. 19th World Congress of Soil Science. Brisbane,
3944 Australia

- 3945 Shrestha, P., M. Sulis, M. Masbou, S. Kollet, and C. Simmer. 2014. A scale-consistent terrestrial
3946 systems modeling platform based on cosmo, clm, and parflow. *Monthly Weather Review*
3947 142:3466-3483.
- 3948 Shubert, B.O. 1972. A sequential method seeking the global maximum of a function. *SIAM Journal on*
3949 *Numerical Analysis* 9:379-388.
- 3950 Shuttleworth, W.J. 2006. Towards one-step estimation of crop water requirements. *Transactions of*
3951 *the Asabe* 49:925-935.
- 3952 Shuval, H.I., A. Adin, B. Fattal, E. Rawitz, and Y. Perez. 1986. Integrated resource recovery wastewater
3953 irrigation in developing countries. World Bank technical paper.
- 3954 Simota, C., R. Horn, H. Fleige, A. Dexter, E. Czyz, E. Diaz-Pereira, F. Mayol, K. Rajkai, and D. De la Rosa.
3955 2005. Sidass project: Part 1. A spatial distributed simulation model predicting the dynamics
3956 of agro-physical soil state for selection of management practices to prevent soil erosion. *Soil*
3957 *and Tillage Research* 82:15-18.
- 3958 Simunek, J., and S.A. Bradford. 2008. Vadose zone modeling: Introduction and importance. *Vadose*
3959 *Zone J.* 7:581-586.
- 3960 Šimůnek, J., N.J. Jarvis, M.T. van Genuchten, and A. Gardenas. 2003. Review and comparison of
3961 models for describing non-equilibrium and preferential flow and transport in the vadose
3962 zone. *Journal of Hydrology* 272:14-35.
- 3963 Šimůnek, J., M.T. van Genuchten, and M. Sejna. 2008. Development and applications of the hydrus
3964 and stanmod software packages and related codes. *Vadose Zone Journal* 7:587-600.
- 3965 Šimůnek, J., M.T. van Genuchten, and M. Šejna. 2008. Development and applications of the hydrus
3966 and stanmod software packages and related codes all rights reserved. No part of this
3967 periodical may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or
3968 mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval
3969 system, without permission in writing from the publisher. *Vadose Zone J.* 7:587-600.
- 3970 Singh, B.K., R.D. Bardgett, P. Smith, and D.S. Reay. 2010. Microorganisms and climate change:
3971 Terrestrial feedbacks and mitigation options. *Nature Reviews Microbiology* 8:779-790.
- 3972 Singleton, M.J., E.L. Sonnenthal, M.E. Conrad, D.J. DePaolo, and G.W. Gee. 2004. Multiphase reactive
3973 transport modeling of seasonal infiltration events and stable isotope fractionation in
3974 unsaturated zone pore water and vapor at the hanford site. *Vadose Zone J.* 3:775-785.
- 3975 Six, J., H. Bossuyt, S. Degryze, and K. Denef. 2004. A history of research on the link between
3976 (micro)aggregates, soil biota, and soil organic matter dynamics. *Soil and Tillage Research*
3977 79:7-31.
- 3978 Six, J., R.T. Conant, E.A. Paul, and K. Paustian. 2002. Stabilization mechanisms of soil organic matter:
3979 Implications for c-saturation of soils. *Plant and Soil* 241:155-176.
- 3980 Six, J., and K. Paustian. 2014. Aggregate-associated soil organic matter as an ecosystem property and
3981 a measurement tool. *Soil Biology & Biochemistry* 68:A4-A9.
- 3982 Slater, L., D. Ntarlagiannis, and D. Wishart. 2006. On the relationship between induced polarization
3983 and surface area in metal-sand and clay-sand mixtures. *GEOPHYSICS* 71:A1-A5.
- 3984 Smith, G.M., K.L. Smith, R. Kowe, D. Pérez-Sánchez, M. Thorne, Y. Thiry, D. Read, and J. Molinero.
3985 2014. Recent developments in assessment of long-term radionuclide behavior in the
3986 geosphere-biosphere subsystem. *Journal of Environmental Radioactivity* 131:89-109.
- 3987 Smith, J., P. Gottschalk, J. Bellarby, S. Chapman, A. Lilly, W. Towers, J. Bell, K. Coleman, D. Nayak, M.
3988 Richards, J. Hillier, H. Flynn, M. Wattenbach, M. Aitkenhead, J. Yeluripati, J. Farmer, R. Milne,
3989 A. Thomson, C. Evans, A. Whitmore, P. Falloon, and P. Smith. 2010. Estimating changes in
3990 scottish soil carbon stocks using ecosse. I. Model description and uncertainties. *Climate*
3991 *Research* 45:179-192.
- 3992 Smith, P., J.U. Smith, D.S. Powelson, W.B. McGill, J.R.M. Arah, O.G. Chertov, K. Coleman, U. Franko, S.
3993 Frolking, D.S. Jenkinson, L.S. Jensen, R.H. Kelly, H. Klein-Gunnewiek, A.S. Komarov, C. Li, J.A.E.
3994 Molina, T. Mueller, W.J. Parton, J.H.M. Thornley, and A.P. Whitmore. 1997. A comparison of
3995 the performance of nine soil organic matter models using datasets from seven long-term
3996 experiments. *Geoderma* 81:153-225.

- 3997 Smith, S.E., I. Jakobsen, M. Grønlund, and F.A. Smith. 2011. Roles of arbuscular mycorrhizas in plant
3998 phosphorus nutrition: Interactions between pathways of phosphorus uptake in arbuscular
3999 mycorrhizal roots have important implications for understanding and manipulating plant
4000 phosphorus acquisition. *Plant Physiology* 156:1050-1057.
- 4001 Smith, S.L., K.D. Thelen, and S.J. MacDonald. 2013. Yield and quality analyses of bioenergy crops
4002 grown on a regulatory brownfield. *Biomass & Bioenergy* 49:123-130.
- 4003 Soane, B.D., and C. van Ouwerkerk. 1995. Implications of soil compaction in crop production for the
4004 quality of the environment. *Soil and Tillage Research* 35:5-22.
- 4005 Soehne, W. 1953. Distribution of pressure in the soil and soil deformation under tractor tires. .
4006 *Grundl. Landtech.* 5:49-59.
- 4007 Soehne, W. 1958. Fundamentals of pressure distribution and soil compaction under tractor tires.
4008 *Agric. Eng* 39:276-290.
- 4009 Soil Survey Staff. 1995. Soil survey geographic (ssurgo) data base. U.S. Department of Agriculture,
4010 Natural Resources Conservation Service, Fort Worth, Texas.
- 4011 Somma, F., J.W. Hopmans, and V. Clausnitzer. 1998. Transient three-dimensional modeling of soil
4012 water and solute transport with simultaneous root growth, root water and nutrient uptake.
4013 *Plant and Soil* 202:281-293.
- 4014 Song, X., L. Shi, M. Ye, J. Yang, and I.M. Navon. 2014. Numerical comparison of iterative ensemble
4015 kalman filters for unsaturated flow inverse modeling. *Vadose Zone J.* 13.
- 4016 Srivastava, H.S., P. Patel, M.L. Manchanda, and S. Adiga. 2003. Use of multiincidence angle radarsat-1
4017 sar data to incorporate the effect of surface roughness in soil moisture estimation. *Ieee*
4018 *Transactions on Geoscience and Remote Sensing* 41:1638-1640.
- 4019 Stamati, F.E., N.P. Nikolaidis, S. Banwart, and W.E.H. Blum. 2013. A coupled carbon, aggregation, and
4020 structure turnover (cast) model for topsoils. *Geoderma* 211:51-64.
- 4021 Steefel, C., S. Yabusaki, and U. Mayer. 2015. Special volume on subsurface environmental simulation
4022 benchmarks. *Computational Geosciences*.
- 4023 Steefel, C.I., C.A.J. Appelo, B. Arora, D. Jacques, T. Kalbacher, O. Kolditz, V. Lagneau, P. Lichtner,
4024 C.K.U. Mayer, J.C.L. Meeussen, S. Molins, D. Moulton, H. Shao, J. Šimůnek, N. Spycher, S.B.
4025 Yabusaki, and G.T. Yeh. 2014. Reactive transport codes for subsurface environmental
4026 simulation. *Computational Geosciences*
- 4027 Steffens, K., N. Jarvis, E. Lewan, B. Lindström, J. Kreuger, E. Kjellström, and J. Moeys. 2015. Direct and
4028 indirect effects of climate change on herbicide leaching — a regional scale assessment in
4029 sweden. *Science of The Total Environment* 514:239-249.
- 4030 Steffens, M., and H. Buddenbaum. 2013. Laboratory imaging spectroscopy of a stagnic luvisol profile -
4031 high resolution soil characterisation, classification and mapping of elemental concentrations.
4032 *Geoderma* 195:122-132.
- 4033 Steffens, M., M. Kohlpaintner, and H. Buddenbaum. 2014. Fine spatial resolution mapping of soil
4034 organic matter quality in a histosol profile. *European Journal of Soil Science* 65:827-839.
- 4035 Stenemo, F., A.M. Lindahl, A. Gärdenäs, and N. Jarvis. 2007. Meta-modeling of the pesticide fate
4036 model macro for groundwater exposure assessments using artificial neural networks. *Journal*
4037 *of contaminant hydrology* 93:270-283.
- 4038 Stevens, A., M. Nocita, G. Toth, L. Montanarella, and B. van Wesemael. 2013. Prediction of soil
4039 organic carbon at the european scale by visible and near infrared reflectance spectroscopy.
4040 *Plos One* 8.
- 4041 Stöckle, C.O., A.R. Kemanian, R.L. Nelson, J.C. Adam, R. Sommer, and B. Carlson. 2014. Cropsyst
4042 model evolution: From field to regional to global scales and from research to decision
4043 support systems. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 62:361-369.
- 4044 Stokes, A., G.B. Douglas, T. Fourcaud, F. Giadrossich, C. Gillies, T. Hubble, J.H. Kim, K.W. Loades, Z.
4045 Mao, I.R. Mclvor, S.B. Mickovski, S. Mitchell, N. Osman, C. Phillips, J. Poesen, D. Polster, F.
4046 Preti, P. Raymond, F. Rey, M. Schwarz, and L.R. Walker. 2014. Ecological mitigation of
4047 hillslope instability: Ten key issues facing researchers and practitioners. *Plant and Soil* 377:1-
4048 23.

4049 Stuben, K. 2001. A review of algebraic multigrid. *Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics*
4050 128:281-309.

4051 Sutanto, S.J., J. Wenninger, A.M.J. Coenders-Gerrits, and S. Uhlenbrook. 2012. Partitioning of
4052 evaporation into transpiration, soil evaporation and interception: A comparison between
4053 isotope measurements and a hydrus-1d model. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*
4054 16:2605-2616.

4055 Tang, Q., H. Gao, H. Lu, and D.P. Lettenmaier. 2009. Remote sensing: Hydrology. *Progress in Physical*
4056 *Geography* 33:490-509.

4057 Tanji, K.K. 2002. Salinity in the soil environment. *Salinity: Environment - Plants - Molecules*:21-51.

4058 Tartakovsky, A.M., T.D. Scheibe, and P. Meakin. 2009. Pore-scale model for reactive transport and
4059 biomass growth. *Journal of Porous Media* 12:417-434.

4060 Taylor, L., S. Banwart, J. Leake, and D.J. Beerling. 2011. Modeling the evolutionary rise of
4061 ectomycorrhiza on sub-surface weathering environments and the geochemical carbon cycle.
4062 *American Journal of Science* 311:369-403.

4063 Thaysen, E.M., D. Jacques, S. Jessen, C.E. Andersen, E. Laloy, P. Ambus, D.J. Postma, and I. Jakobsen.
4064 2014. Inorganic carbon fluxes across the vadose zone of planted and unplanted soil
4065 mesocosms. *Biogeosciences* 11:7179-7192.

4066 Thaysen, E.M.J., D.; Jessen, S.; Andersen, C. E.; Laloy, E.; Ambus, P.; Postma, D.; Jakobsen, I. 2014.
4067 Inorganic carbon fluxes across the vadose zone of planted and unplanted soil mesocosms.
4068 *Biogeosciences* 11:7179-7192.

4069 Thomas, P.J., J.C. Baker, and L.W. Zelazny 2000. An expansive soil index for predicting shrink-swell
4070 potential. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 64:268-274.

4071 Tian, D., and S. Niu. 2015. A global analysis of soil acidification caused by nitrogen addition.
4072 *Environmental Research Letters* 10.

4073 Tiedje, J.M., A.J. Sexstone, D.D. Myrold, and J.A. Robinson. 1982. Denitrification- ecological niches,
4074 competition and survival. *Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek Journal of Microbiology* 48:569-583.

4075 Tiktak, A., J.J.T.I. Boesten, A.M.A. van der Linden, and M. Vanclooster. 2006. Mapping ground water
4076 vulnerability to pesticide leaching with a process-based metamodel of europearl. *Journal of*
4077 *Environmental Quality* 35:1213-1226.

4078 Tiktak, A., D.S. de Nie, J.D. Piñeros Garcet, A. Jones, and M. Vanclooster. 2004. Assessment of the
4079 pesticide leaching risk at the pan-european level. The europearl approach. *Journal of*
4080 *Hydrology* 289:222-238.

4081 Tiktak, A., R. Hendriks, J. Boesten, and A. Van der Linden. 2012. A spatially distributed model of
4082 pesticide movement in dutch macroporous soils. *Journal of hydrology* 470:316-327.

4083 Tinker, P.B., and P. Nye. 2000. *Solute movement in the rhizosphere*. Oxford University Press 464.

4084 Tipping, E., E.C. Rowe, C.D. Evans, R.T.E. Mills, B.A. Emmett, J.S. Chaplow, and J.R. Hall. 2012. N14c: A
4085 plant-soil nitrogen and carbon cycling model to simulate terrestrial ecosystem responses to
4086 atmospheric nitrogen deposition. *Ecological Modelling* 247:11-26.

4087 Todd-Brown, K.E.O., F.M. Hopkins, S.N. Kivlin, J.M. Talbot, and S.D. Allison. 2012. A framework for
4088 representing microbial decomposition in coupled climate models. *Biogeochemistry* 109:19-
4089 33.

4090 Tomlinson, C.J., L. Chapman, J.E. Thornes, and C. Baker. 2011. Remote sensing land surface
4091 temperature for meteorology and climatology: A review. *Meteorological Applications*
4092 18:296-306.

4093 Torn, A.A. 1977. Cluster analysis using seed points and density-determined hyperspheres as an aid to
4094 global optimization. *Systems, Man and Cybernetics, IEEE Transactions on* 7:610-616.

4095 Torsvik, V., J. Goksoyr, and F.L. Daae. 1990. High diversity in DNA of soil bacteria. *Applied and*
4096 *Environmental Microbiology* 56:782-787.

4097 Torsvik, V., and L. Ovreas. 2002. Microbial diversity and function in soil: From genes to ecosystems.
4098 *Current Opinion in Microbiology* 5:240-245.

4099 Torsvik, V., R. Sørheim, and J. Goksoyr. 1996. Total bacterial diversity in soil and sediment
4100 communities—a review. *Journal of Industrial Microbiology* 17:170-178.

- 4101 Toth, G., A. Jones, and L. Montanarella. 2013. The lucas topsoil database and derived information on
4102 the regional variability of cropland topsoil properties in the european union. *Environmental*
4103 *Monitoring and Assessment* 185:7409-7425.
- 4104 Toze, S. 2006. Reuse of effluent water - benefits and risks. *Agricultural Water Management* 80:147-
4105 159.
- 4106 Tranter, G., B. Minasny, A.B. McBratney, R.A.V. Rossel, and B.W. Murphy. 2008. Comparing spectral
4107 soil inference systems and mid-infrared spectroscopic predictions of soil moisture retention.
4108 *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 72:1394-1400.
- 4109 Trenberth, K.E., J.T. Fasullo, and T.G. Shepherd. 2015. Attribution of climate extreme events. *Nature*
4110 *Clim. Change* 5:725-730.
- 4111 Troeh, F.R. 1992. Soil and land.
- 4112 Tuli, A., and W.A. Jury. 2003. Modeling approaches to salt management problems in irrigated
4113 agriculture: A review.
- 4114 Turbé, A., A. De Toni, P. Benito, P. Lavelle, P. Lavelle, N. Ruiz, W.H. van der Putten, E. Labouze, and S.
4115 Mudgal. 2010. Soil biodiversity: Functions, threats and tools for policy makers. Bio
4116 Intelligence Service, IRD, and NIOO, Report for European Commission (DG Environment).
- 4117 USDA. 1990. Epic-erosion/productivity impact calculator. 1. Model documentation (version 0941).
4118 Technical bulletin nr. 1768. Washington DC.
- 4119 van Dam, J.C., P. Groenendijk, R.F.A. Hendriks, and J.G. Kroes. 2008. Advances of modeling water
4120 flow in variably saturated soils with swap. *Vadose Zone J.* 7:640-653.
- 4121 van Dam, J.C., J. Huygen, J.G. Wesseling, R.A. Feddes, P. Kabat, P.E.V. van Walsum, P. Groenendijk and
4122 C.A. van Diepen. 1997. Theory of swap version 2.0. Simulation of water flow, solute transport
4123 and plant growth in the soil-water-atmosphere-plant environment. Wageningen Agricultural
4124 University.
- 4125 van Dam, J.C., R. Singh, J.J.E. Bessembinder, P.A. Leffelaar, W.G.M. Bastiaanssen, R.K. Jhorar, J.G.
4126 Kroes, and P. Droogers. 2006. Assessing options to increase water productivity in irrigated
4127 river basins using remote sensing and modelling tools. *International Journal of Water*
4128 *Resources Development* 22:115-133.
- 4129 Van den Akker, J. 2004. Socomo: A soil compaction model to calculate soil stresses and the subsoil
4130 carrying capacity. *Soil and Tillage Research* 79:113-127.
- 4131 van der Heijden, M.G.A., R.D. Bardgett, and N.M. van Straalen. 2008. The unseen majority: Soil
4132 microbes as drivers of plant diversity and productivity in terrestrial ecosystems. *Ecology*
4133 *Letters* 11:296-310.
- 4134 van der Zee, S., S. Shah, and R. Vervoort. 2014. Root zone salinity and sodicity under seasonal rainfall
4135 due to feedback of decreasing hydraulic conductivity. *Water Resources Research* 50:9432-
4136 9446.
- 4137 van Engelen, V.W.P., and W. Ting-Tiang. 1995. Global and national soils and terrain digital databases
4138 (soter): Procedures manual. Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. Land Water
4139 Development Division. , Rome.
- 4140 van Genuchten, M.T. 1980. A closed form equation for predicting the hydraulic conductivity of
4141 unsaturated soils. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 44:892 - 898.
- 4142 van Genuchten, M.T. 1987. A numerical model for water and solute movement in and below the root
4143 zone. Research Report. United States Department of Agriculture Agricultural Research
4144 Service U.S. Salinity Laboratory,.
- 4145 van Groenigen, K.J., J. Six, B.A. Hungate, M.A. de Graaff, N. van Breemen, and C. van Kessel. 2006.
4146 Element interactions limit soil carbon storage. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*
4147 *Sciences of the United States of America* 103:6571-6574.
- 4148 van Ittersum, M.K., P.A. Leffelaar, H. van Keulen, M.J. Kropff, L. Bastiaans, and J. Goudriaan. 2003. On
4149 approaches and applications of the wageningen crop models. *European Journal of Agronomy*
4150 18:201-234.
- 4151 Van Keulen, H., and C.G.E.M. Van Beek. 1971. Water movement in layered soils a simulation model.
4152 *Netherlands Journal of Agricultural Science* 19:138-153.

- 4153 van Leeuwen, P.J. 2009. Particle filtering in geophysical systems. *Monthly Weather Review* 137:4089-
4154 4114.
- 4155 van Lier, Q.D., J.C. van Dam, A. Durigon, M.A. dos Santos, and K. Metselaar. 2013. Modeling water
4156 potentials and flows in the soil-plant system comparing hydraulic resistances and
4157 transpiration reduction functions. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.
- 4158 Van Oost, K., T.A. Quine, G. Govers, S. De Gryze, J. Six, J.W. Harden, J.C. Ritchie, G.W. McCarty, G.
4159 Heckrath, C. Kosmas, J.V. Giraldez, J.R.M. da Silva, and R. Merckx. 2007. The impact of
4160 agricultural soil erosion on the global carbon cycle. *Science* 318:626-629.
- 4161 Van Rompaey, A.J.J., G. Verstraeten, K. Van Oost, G. Govers, and J. Poesen. 2001. Modelling mean
4162 annual sediment yield using a distributed approach. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*
4163 26:1221-1236.
- 4164 Van Schilfgaarde, J. 1994. Irrigation- a blessing or a curse. *Agricultural Water Management* 25:203-
4165 219.
- 4166 Van Veen, J.A., and P.J. Kuikman. 1990. Soil structural aspects of decomposition of organic matter by
4167 micro-organisms. *Biogeochemistry* 11:213-233.
- 4168 Van Veen, J.A., J.N. Ladd, and M. Amato. 1985. Turnover of carbon and nitrogen through the
4169 microbial biomass in a sandy loam and a clay soil incubated with [¹⁴C(u)]glucose and
4170 [¹⁵N](nh₄)₂so₄ under different moisture regimes. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 17:747-756.
- 4171 Van Veen, J.A., and E.A. Paul. 1981. Organic-carbon dynamics in grassland soils 1. Background
4172 information and computer-simulation. *Canadian Journal of Soil Science* 61:185-201.
- 4173 Vanderborght, J., R. Kasteel, M. Herbst, M. Javaux, D. Thiery, M. Vanclooster, C. Mouvet, and H.
4174 Vereecken. 2005. A set of analytical benchmarks to test numerical models of flow and
4175 transport in soils. *Vadose Zone J.* 4:206-221.
- 4176 Vanderborght, J., A. Tiktak, J.J.T.I. Boesten, and H. Vereecken. 2011. Effect of pesticide fate
4177 parameters and their uncertainty on the selection of 'worst-case' scenarios of pesticide
4178 leaching to groundwater. *Pest Management Science* 67:294-306.
- 4179 Vanwalleghem, T., U. Stockmann, B. Minasny, and A.B. McBratney. 2013. A quantitative model for
4180 integrating landscape evolution and soil formation. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Earth
4181 Surface* 118:331-347.
- 4182 Vereecken, H., J.A. Huisman, H. Bogaen, J. Vanderborght, J.A. Vrugt, and J.W. Hopmans. 2008. On the
4183 value of soil moisture measurements in vadose zone hydrology: A review. *Water Resources
4184 Research* 44.
- 4185 Vereecken, H., L. Weihermüller, F. Jonard, and C. Montzka. 2012. Characterization of crop canopies
4186 and water stress related phenomena using microwave remote sensing methods: A review.
4187 *gsvadzone* 11:-.
- 4188 Vereecken, H., M. Weynants, M. Javaux, Y. Pachepsky, M.G. Schaap, and M.T. van Genuchten. 2010.
4189 Using pedotransfer functions to estimate the van genuchten-mualem soil hydraulic
4190 properties: A review. *Vadose Zone J.* 9:795-820.
- 4191 Vereecken, H.N., O ; Lindenmayr, G ; Basermann, A 1996. A schwarz domain decomposition method
4192 for solution of transient unsaturated water flow on parallel computers. *ECOLOGICAL
4193 MODELLING* 93:275-289.
- 4194 Verhoest, N.E.C., H. Lievens, W. Wagner, J. Alvarez-Mozos, M.S. Moran, and F. Mattia. 2008. On the
4195 soil roughness parameterization problem in soil moisture retrieval of bare surfaces from
4196 synthetic aperture radar. *Sensors* 8:4213-4248.
- 4197 Villa, F., K.J. Bagstad, B. Voigt, G.W. Johnson, R. Portela, M. Honzak, and D. Batker. 2014. A
4198 methodology for adaptable and robust ecosystem services assessment. *Plos One* 9.
- 4199 Villarini, G. 2009. Inference of spatial scaling properties of rainfall: Impact of radar rainfall estimation
4200 uncertainties. *Geoscience and Remote Sensing Letters, IEEE* 6:812-815.
- 4201 Vinken, G.C.M., K.F. Boersma, J.D. Maasackers, M. Adon, and R.V. Martin. 2014. Worldwide biogenic
4202 soil nox emissions inferred from omi no₂ observations. *Atmos. Chem. Phys.* 14:10363-10381.
- 4203 Viscarra-Rossel, and T. Behrens. 2010. Using data mining to model and interpret soil diffuse
4204 reflectance spectra. *Geoderma* 158:46-54.

- 4205 Viscarra-Rossel, C., S. R., Ortega, A., Fouad, Y. 2009. In situ measurements of soil colour, mineral
4206 composition and clay content by vis-nir spectroscopy. *Geoderma* 150:253-266.
- 4207 Viscarra Rossel, R.A., and A.B. McBratney. 2003. Modelling the kinetics of buffer reactions for rapid
4208 field predictions of lime requirements. *Geoderma* 114:49-63.
- 4209 Vogel, H.-J., and K. Roth. 2003. Moving through scales of flow and transport in soil. *Journal of*
4210 *Hydrology* 272:95-106.
- 4211 Vogel, H.J., and O. Ippisch. 2008. Estimation of a critical spatial discretization limit for solving
4212 richards' equation at large scales. *Vadose Zone J.* 7:112-114.
- 4213 Volkman, T.H.M., and M. Weiler. 2014. Continual in situ monitoring of pore water stable isotopes in
4214 the subsurface. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences* 18:1819-1833.
- 4215 Voortman, R.L., B.G.J.S. Sonneveld, and M.A. Keyzer. 2003. African land ecology: Opportunities and
4216 constraints for agricultural development. *AMBIO* 32.
- 4217 Vrieling, A. 2006. Satellite remote sensing for water erosion assessment: A review. *Catena* 65:2-18.
- 4218 Vrugt, J.A., H.V. Gupta, W. Bouten, and S. Sorooshian. 2003. A shuffled complex evolution metropolis
4219 algorithm for optimization and uncertainty assessment of hydrologic model parameters.
4220 *Water Resources Research* 39.
- 4221 Vrugt, J.A., and B.A. Robinson. 2007. Improved evolutionary optimization from genetically adaptive
4222 multimethod search. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States*
4223 *of America* 104:708-711.
- 4224 Vrugt, J.A., B.A. Robinson, and J.M. Hyman. 2009. Self-adaptive multimethod search for global
4225 optimization in real-parameter spaces. *Ieee Transactions on Evolutionary Computation*
4226 13:243-259.
- 4227 Vrugt, J.A., B.A. Robinson, and V.V. Vesselinov. 2005. Improved inverse modeling for flow and
4228 transport in subsurface media: Combined parameter and state estimation. *Geophysical*
4229 *Research Letters* 32.
- 4230 Vrugt, J.A., and M. Sadegh. 2013. Toward diagnostic model calibration and evaluation: Approximate
4231 bayesian computation. *Water Resources Research* 49:4335-4345.
- 4232 Vrugt, J.A., C.J.F. ter Braak, M.P. Clark, J.M. Hyman, and B.A. Robinson. 2008. Treatment of input
4233 uncertainty in hydrologic modeling: Doing hydrology backward with markov chain monte
4234 carlo simulation. *Water Resources Research* 44.
- 4235 Vrugt, J.A., C.J.F. ter Braak, C.G.H. Diks, B.A. Robinson, J.M. Hyman, and D. Higdon. 2009. Accelerating
4236 markov chain monte carlo simulation by differential evolution with self-adaptive randomized
4237 subspace sampling. *International Journal of Nonlinear Sciences and Numerical Simulation*
4238 10:273-290.
- 4239 Waiser, T.H., C.L.S. Morgan, D.J. Brown, and C.T. Hallmark. 2007. In situ characterization of soil clay
4240 content with visible near-infrared diffuse reflectance spectroscopy. *Soil Science Society of*
4241 *America Journal* 71:389-396.
- 4242 Wajid, A., A. Ahmad, H. M., H.u.R. M., T. Khaliq, M. Mubeen, F. Rasul, U. Bashir, M. Awais, J. Iqbal,
4243 S.R. Sultana, G. Hoogenboom, and W.A. Aftab. 2014. Modeling growth, development and
4244 seed-cotton yield for varying nitrogen increments and planting dates using dssat. *Pakistan*
4245 *Journal of Agricultural Sciences* 51:641-650.
- 4246 Wallach, R., O. Ben-Arie, and E.R. Graber. 2005. Soil water repellency induced by long-term irrigation
4247 with treated sewage effluent. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 34:1910-1920.
- 4248 Wang, G., and D. Or. 2013. Hydration dynamics promote bacterial coexistence on rough surfaces.
4249 *Isme Journal* 7:395-404.
- 4250 Wang, G., and D. Or. 2014. Trophic interactions induce spatial self-organization of microbial consortia
4251 on rough surfaces. *Scientific Reports* 4.
- 4252 Wang, L., M. Ochs, D. Mallants, L. Vielle-Petit, E. Martens, D. Jacques, P. De Cannière, J.A. Berry, and
4253 B. Leterme. 2013. A new radionuclide sorption database for benchmark cement accounting
4254 for geochemical evolution of cement. p. 103-112. *In* F. Bart, C. Cau-di-Coumes, F. Frizon, and
4255 S. Lorente (ed.) *Cement-based materials for nuclear waste storage*. Springer New York.

- 4256 Wang, P., X.F. Song, D.M. Han, Y.H. Zhang, and X. Liu. 2010. A study of root water uptake of crops
4257 indicated by hydrogen and oxygen stable isotopes: A case in shanxi province, china.
4258 *Agricultural Water Management* 97:475-482.
- 4259 Warner, R.M. 2008. *Applied statistics: From bivariate through multivariate techniques*. 2nd ed. Sage
4260 Publication Incorporation, Thousand Oaks, CA.
- 4261 Watson, D.A., and J.M. Laflen. 1986. Soil strenght, slope, and rainfall inensity effects on interrill
4262 erosion. *Transactions of the Asae* 29:97-102.
- 4263 Weiland, F.C.S., L.P.H. van Beek, J.C.J. Kwadijk, and M.F.P. Bierkens. 2010. The ability of a gcm-forced
4264 hydrological model to reproduce global discharge variability. *Hydrology and Earth System
4265 Sciences* 14:1595-1621.
- 4266 Weller, U., M. Zipprich, M. Sommer, W.Z. Castell, and M. Wehrhan. 2007. Mapping clay content
4267 across boundaries at the landscape scale with electromagnetic induction. *Soil Science Society
4268 of America Journal* 71:1740-1747.
- 4269 Werban, U., T. Behrens, G. Cassiani, and P. Dietrich. 2010. Isoil: An eu project to integrate geophysics,
4270 digital soil mapping, and soil science. *Proximal soil sensing*.
- 4271 Werner Stumm, J.J.M. 1995. *Aquatic chemistry: Chemical equilibria and rates in natural waters*, 3rd
4272 edition.
- 4273 West, L.T.a.M.A.N. 1988. Soil consolidation effects on rill and interrill soil loss p. 289. *Agronomy
4274 Abstracts*.
- 4275 Whisler, F.D., and A. Kulte. 1965. The numerical analysis of infiltration , considering hysteresis, into a
4276 vertical soil column at equilibrium under gravity. *Soil Science Society of America Proceedings*
4277 29:489-494.
- 4278 Wierenga, P.J., and C.T. De Wit. 1970. Simualtion of heat tranfer in soils. *Soil Science Society of
4279 America Proceedings* 34:845-848.
- 4280 Wiermann, C., T.R. Way, R. Horn, A.C. Bailey, and E.C. Burt. 1999. Effect of various dynamic loads on
4281 stress and strain behavior of a norfolk sandy loam. *Soil & Tillage Research* 50:127-135.
- 4282 Wiesmeier, M., P. Sporlein, U. Geuss, E. Hangen, S. Haug, A. Reischl, B. Schilling, M. von Lutzow, and
4283 I. Kogel-Knabner. 2012. Soil organic carbon stocks in southeast germany (bavaria) as affected
4284 by land use, soil type and sampling depth. *Global Change Biology* 18:2233-2245.
- 4285 Williams, D.G., W. Cable, K. Hultine, J.C.B. Hoedjes, E.A. Yopez, V. Simonneaux, S. Er-Raki, G. Boulet,
4286 H.A.R. de Bruin, A. Chehbouni, O.K. Hartogensis, and F. Timouk. 2004. Evapotranspiration
4287 components determined by stable isotope, sap flow and eddy covariance techniques.
4288 *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* 125:241-258.
- 4289 Williams, J.R., and C.A. Izaurralde. 2005. *The apex model*. Blackland Research Center Reports, Vol. 2.
4290 Blackland Research Center, USDA, Temple, Texas, USA.
- 4291 Wilson, M.F., and A. Henderson-Sellers. 1985. A global archive of land cover and soils data for use in
4292 general-circulation climate models. *Journal of Climatology* 5:119-143.
- 4293 Wilson, S.M. 2009. Use of vegetation-based methods for soil quality assessment in scottish forestry:
4294 A review. *Scottish Forestry* 63:20-29.
- 4295 Winston, W.L., and J.B. Goldberg. 2004. *Operations research: Applications and algorithms*. Duxbury
4296 press Boston.
- 4297 Winter, J., O. Ippisch, and H.J. Vogel. 2015. Dynamic processes in capillary fringes. *Vadose Zone J.* 14.
- 4298 Wischmeier, W.H.S., D. D. . 1978. Prediction rainfall erosion loss. p. 62 pp. *In P.r.e.l.-a.g.t.c. planning*
4299 (ed.), *Predicting rainfall erosion losses - a guide to conservation planning*.
- 4300 WMO. 2005. *Climate and land degradation*. WMO-No. 989. World Meteorological Organization.
- 4301 Wohling, T., S. Gayler, E. Priesack, J. Ingwersen, H.D. Wizemann, P. Hogy, M. Cuntz, S. Attinger, V.
4302 Wulfmeyer, and T. Streck. 2013. Multiresponse, multiobjective calibration as a diagnostic
4303 tool to compare accuracy and structural limitations of five coupled soil-plant models and
4304 clm3.5. *Water Resources Research* 49:8200-8221.
- 4305 Wöhling, T., A. Schöniger, S. Gayler, and W. Nowak. 2015. Bayesian model averaging to explore the
4306 worth of data for soil-plant model selection and prediction. *Water Resources Research*
4307 51:2825-2846.

4308 Wohling, T., and J.A. Vrugt. 2011. Multiresponse multilayer vadose zone model calibration using
4309 markov chain monte carlo simulation and field water retention data. *Water Resources*
4310 *Research* 47.

4311 Wohling, T., J.A. Vrugt, and G.F. Barkle. 2008. Comparison of three multiobjective optimization
4312 algorithms for inverse modeling of vadose zone hydraulic properties. *Soil Science Society of*
4313 *America Journal* 72:305-319.

4314 Wu, C.-C., and S.A. Margulis. 2011. Feasibility of real-time soil state and flux characterization for
4315 wastewater reuse using an embedded sensor network data assimilation approach. *Journal of*
4316 *Hydrology* 399:313-325.

4317 Wu, C.-C., and S.A. Margulis. 2013. Real-time soil moisture and salinity profile estimation using
4318 assimilation of embedded sensor datastreams. *Vadose Zone J.* 12.

4319 Wu, D.D., E.N. Anagnostou, G. Wang, S. Moges, and M. Zampieri. 2014b. Improving the surface-
4320 ground water interactions in the community land model: Case study in the blue Nile basin.
4321 *Water Resources Research* 50:8015-8033.

4322 Wu, Q., Y.H. Yang, Z.L. Xu, Y. Jin, Y. Guo, and C.L. Lao. 2014a. Applying local neural network and
4323 visible/near-infrared spectroscopy to estimating available nitrogen, phosphorus and
4324 potassium in soil. *Spectroscopy and Spectral Analysis* 34:2102-2105.

4325 Xie, H., Y. Jiang, C. Zhang, and S. Feng. 2015. An analytical model for volatile organic compound
4326 transport through a composite liner consisting of a geomembrane, a gcl, and a soil liner.
4327 *Environmental Science and Pollution Research* 22:2824-2836.

4328 Xiong, X., F. Stagnitti, J. Peterson, G. Allinson, and N. Turoczy. 2001. Heavy metal contamination of
4329 pasture soils by irrigated municipal sewage. *Bulletin of Environmental Contamination and*
4330 *Toxicology* 67:535-540.

4331 Yakir, D., and L.D.L. Sternberg. 2000. The use of stable isotopes to study ecosystem gas exchange.
4332 *Oecologia* 123:297-311.

4333 Yang, Y., Y. Yang, S. Han, I. Macadam, and D.L. Liu. 2014. Prediction of cotton yield and water demand
4334 under climate change and future adaptation measures. *Agricultural Water Management*
4335 144:42-53.

4336 Yin, H.J., E. Wheeler, and R.P. Phillips. 2014. Root-induced changes in nutrient cycling in forests
4337 depend on exudation rates. *Soil Biology & Biochemistry* 78:213-221.

4338 Young, I.M., and J.W. Crawford. 2004. Interactions and self-organization in the soil-microbe complex.
4339 *Science* 304:1634-1637.

4340 Young, I.M., and J.W. Crawford. 2014. Soil biophysics - the challenges. p. 371-377. *In* G.J. Churchman,
4341 and E.R. Landa (ed.) *The soil underfoot*. CRC Press, Boca Raton.

4342 Young, I.M., J.W. Crawford, and C. Rappoldt. 2001. New methods and models for characterising
4343 structural heterogeneity of soil. *Soil & Tillage Research* 61:33-45.

4344 Zabel, F., B. Putzenlechner, and W. Mauser. 2014. Global agricultural land resources – a high
4345 resolution suitability evaluation and its perspectives until 2100 under climate change
4346 conditions. *PLoS ONE* 9:e107522.

4347 Zhang, F., T.C. Yeh, and J.C. Parker. 2012. *Groundwater reactive transport models*. Bentham E-books.

4348 Zhang, Y., S.Q. Xiong, and T.Y. Chen. 1998. Application of airborne gamma-ray spectrometry to
4349 geoscience in China. *Applied Radiation and Isotopes* 49:139-146.

4350 Zhou, H., J. Jaime Gomez-Hernandez, H.-J. Hendricks Franssen, and L. Li. 2011. An approach to
4351 handling non-gaussianity of parameters and state variables in ensemble Kalman filtering.
4352 *Advances in Water Resources* 34:844-864.

4353 Zhou, J.Z., B.C. Xia, D.S. Treves, L.Y. Wu, T.L. Marsh, R.V. O'Neill, A.V. Palumbo, and J.M. Tiedje. 2002.
4354 Spatial and resource factors influencing high microbial diversity in soil. *Applied and*
4355 *Environmental Microbiology* 68:326-334.

4356 Zhou, T., P.J. Shi, G.S. Jia, and Y.Q. Luo. 2013. Nonsteady state carbon sequestration in forest
4357 ecosystems of China estimated by data assimilation. *Journal of Geophysical Research-*
4358 *Biogeosciences* 118:1369-1384.

- 4359 Zhu, Y.D., D.C. Weindorf, and W.T. Zhang. 2011. Characterizing soils using a portable x-ray
4360 fluorescence spectrometer: 1. Soil texture. *Geoderma* 167-68:167-177.
- 4361 Zimmermann, U., D. Ehhalt, and K.O. Muennich. 1967. Soil-water movement and evapotranspiration:
4362 Changes in the isotopic composition of water. p. 567-485. *In* U. Zimmermann (ed.)
4363 Conference on Isotopes in Hydrology, CONF- 661133. International Atomic Energy Agency,
4364 Vienna.
- 4365 Zlinszky, A., and G. Timár. 2013. Historic maps as a data source for socio-hydrology: A case study of
4366 the lake balaton wetland system, hungary. *Hydrol. Earth Syst. Sci.* 17:4589-4606.
- 4367 Zwertvaegher, A., P. Finke, J. De Reu, A. Vandenbohede, L. Lebbe, M. Bats, W. De Clercq, P. De
4368 Smedt, V. Gelorini, J. Sergant, M. Antrop, J. Bourgeois, P. De Maeyer, M. Van Meirvenne, J.
4369 Verniers, and P. Crombé. 2013. Reconstructing phreatic palaeogroundwater levels in a
4370 geoarchaeological context: A case study in flanders, belgium. *Geoarchaeology* 28:170-189.
- 4371 Zygalkis, K.C., G.J.D. Kirk, D.L. Jones, M. Wissuwa, and T. Roose. 2011. A dual porosity model of
4372 nutrient uptake by root hairs. *New Phytologist* 192:676-688.
- 4373 Zygalkis, K.C., and T. Roose. 2012. A mathematical model for investigating the effect of cluster roots
4374 on plant nutrient uptake. *European Physical Journal-Special Topics* 204:103-118.
- 4375

4376 Figure captions

4377

4378 Figure 1 Link between soil processes, soil natural capital and ecosystem services from a soil
4379 modeling perspective (adapted after Dominati et al. (2010). The grey arrows indicate the controls
4380 exerted by the soil processes on the supporting and degrading processes. The red arrows show the
4381 control of supporting and degrading processes on inherent soil processes which on their turn affect
4382 key soil processes. The green arrow indicates the impact of the soil natural capital on regulating and
4383 provisioning ecosystem services. The dots indicate that this list is not exhaustive.

4384

4385 Figure 2 Schematic diagram of N14C, showing carbon (black arrows) and nitrogen (white arrows)
4386 stocks and flows in soil and vegetation. Plants are considered to consist of two types of material,
4387 coarse or fine; soil organic matter is considered to consist of three pools with first-order rate constants
4388 of 0.25 yr^{-1} (slow), 0.025 yr^{-1} (slow) or 0.0005 yr^{-1} (passive). From N14C (Tipping et al. 2012).

4389

4390 Figure 3 Interactions of organic and inorganic compounds in soil. Example of mercury cycle with
4391 emphasis on the pathways in soils (gray boxes). (after Leterme et al. 2014).

4392

4393 Figure 4 Relative water saturation in soil around a root system taking up water simulated with R-
4394 SWMS.

4395

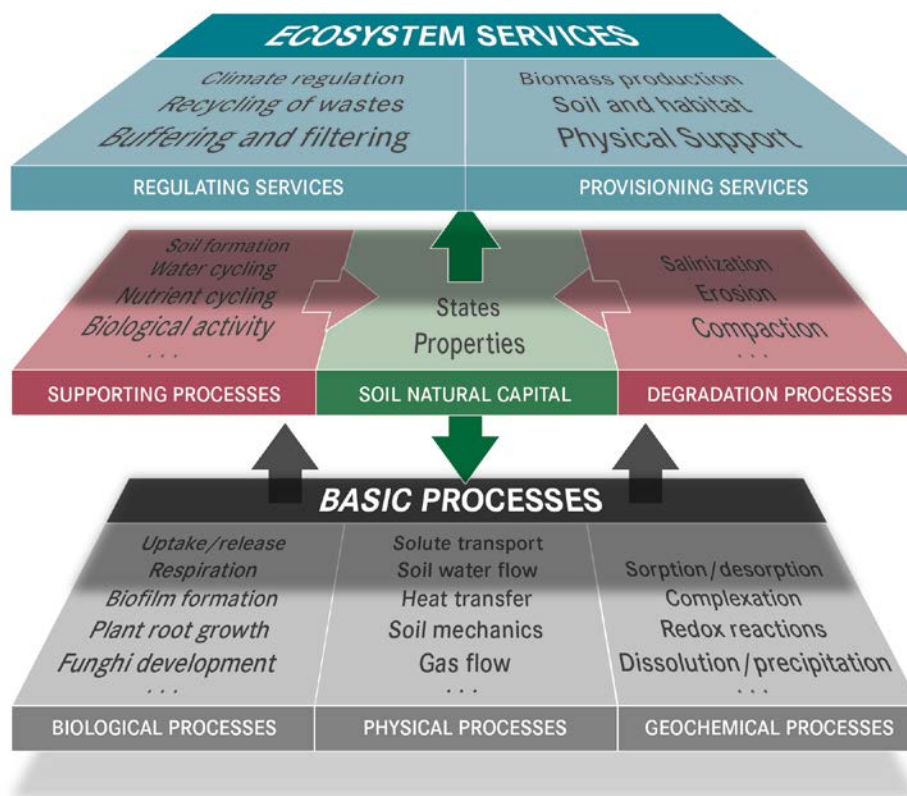
4396 Figure 5 Illustration of the effect of uncertainty of pesticide fate parameters on the predicted
4397 cumulative distribution of leachate concentrations in a certain region. Uncertainty about pesticide fate
4398 parameters may lead to large variations in predictions at a certain location (i.e. difference between
4399 maps of predicted concentrations). Considering the distribution of concentrations in the whole region,
4400 uncertainty in pesticide fate parameters leads to a wider distribution (blue solid curve) than in case
4401 fixed or deterministic parameters are considered (red dashed curve).

4402

4403 Figure 6 Process of the pedotransfer function development.; SWRC – soil water retention curve,
4404 PSD – particle size distribution, BD – bulk density, OC – organic carbon content, CEC – cation
4405 exchange capacity, ANN – artificial neural network, SVM – support vector machines, kNN – k-
4406 nearest neighbor.

4407

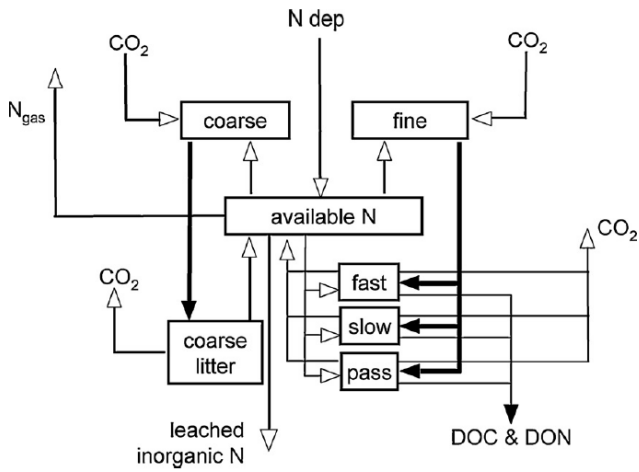
4408	Table captions
4409	
4410	Table 1 Examples of studies in which soil models have been used to quantify ecosystem services
4411	Table 2 Key Challenges to modeling soil supporting and degrading processes
4412	Table 3 Key challenges to soil modeling and ecosystem services
4413	Table 4 Overarching challenges to modeling soil processes
4414	



4416

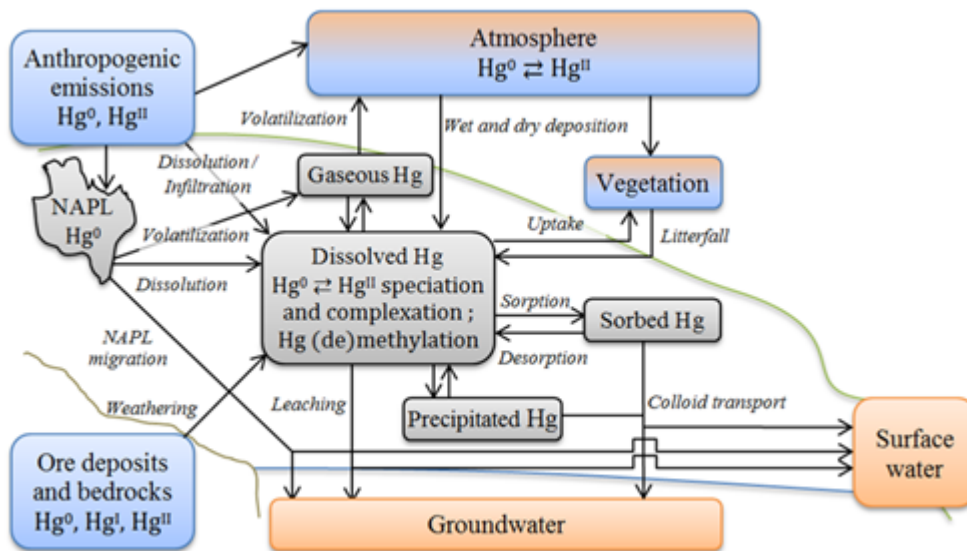
4417 Figure 7 Link between soil processes, soil natural capital and ecosystem services from a soil
 4418 modeling perspective (adapted after Dominati et al. (2010). The grey arrows indicate the controls
 4419 exerted by the soil processes on the supporting and degrading processes. The red arrows show the
 4420 control of supporting and degrading processes on inherent soil processes which on their turn affect
 4421 key soil processes. The green arrow indicates the impact of the soil natural capital on regulating and
 4422 provisioning ecosystem services. The dots indicate that this list is not exhaustive.

4423



4424
 4425
 4426
 4427
 4428
 4429

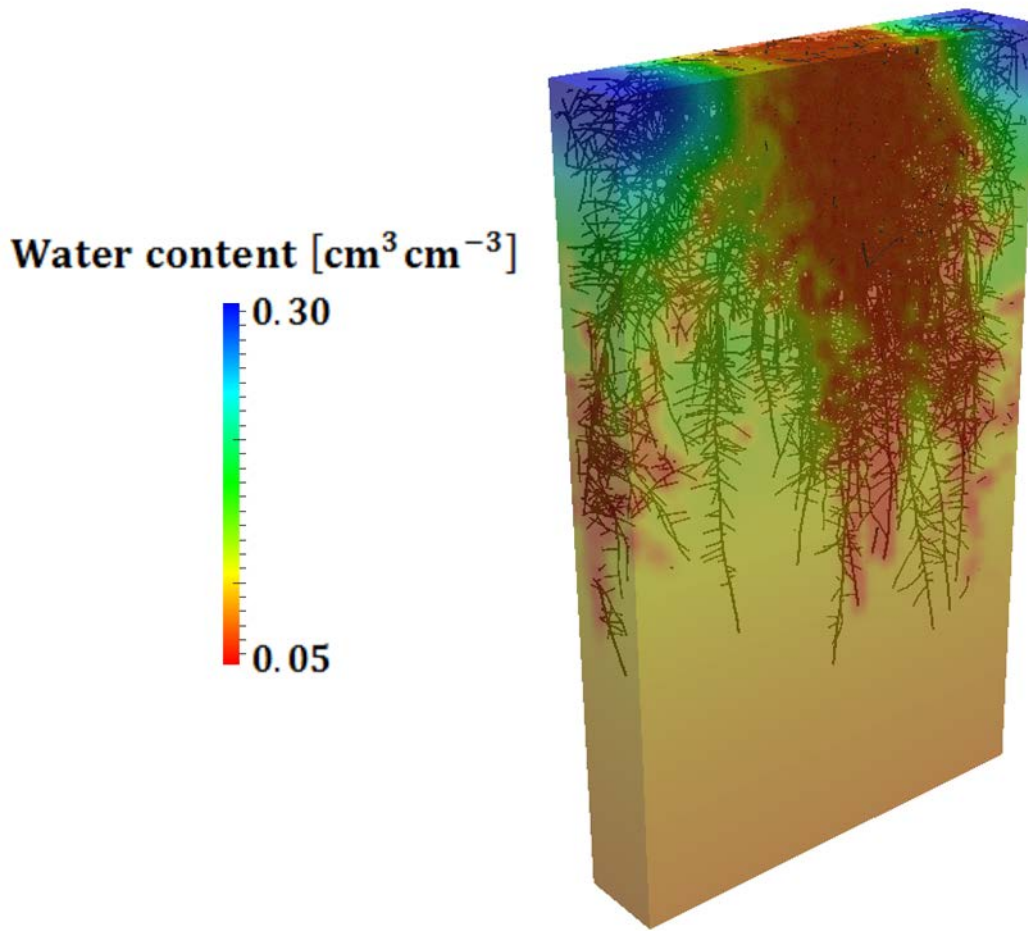
Figure 8 Schematic diagram of N14C, showing carbon (black arrows) and nitrogen (white arrows) stocks and flows in soil and vegetation. Plants are considered to consist of two types of material, coarse or fine; soil organic matter is considered to consist of three pools with first-order rate constants of 0.25 yr^{-1} (slow), 0.025 yr^{-1} (slow) or 0.0005 yr^{-1} (passive). From N14C (Tipping et al. 2012).



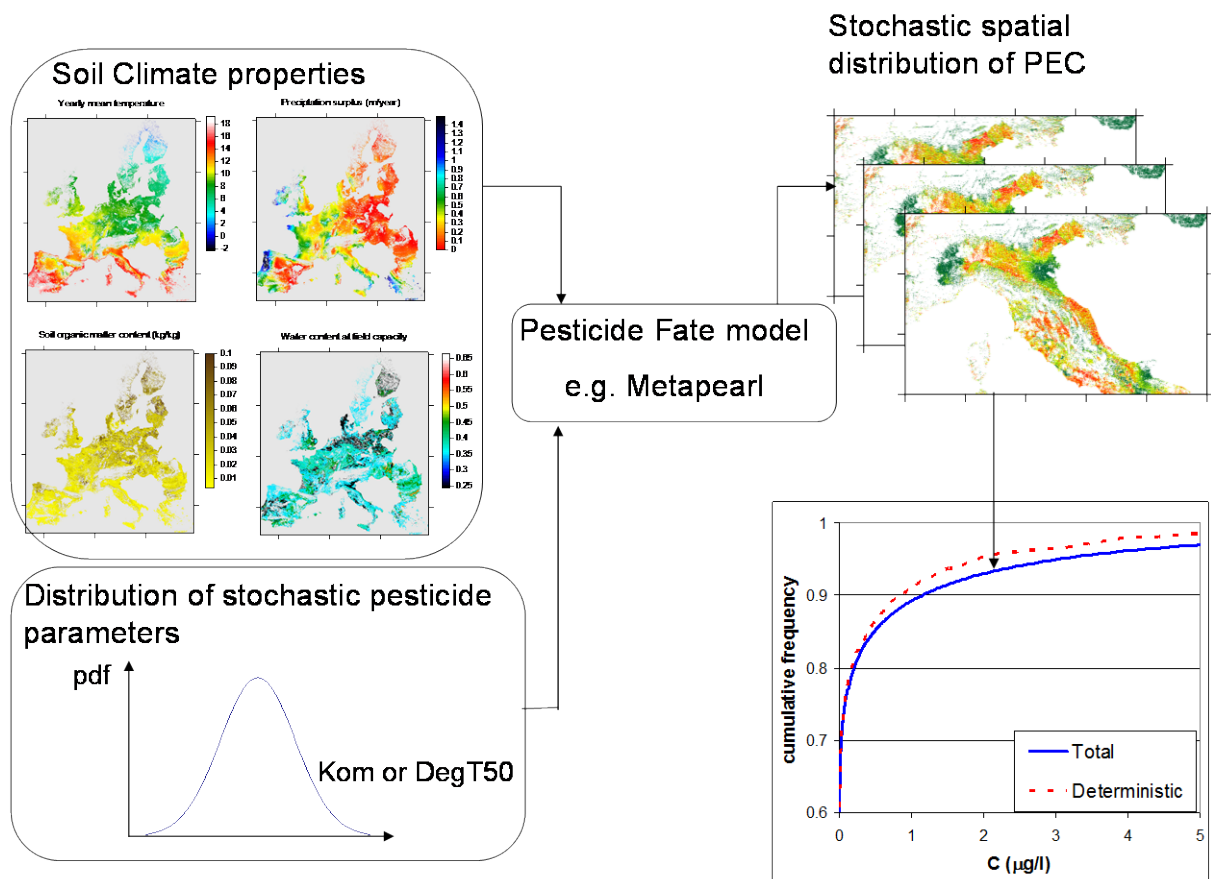
4430
 4431
 4432
 4433
 4434

Figure 9 Interactions of organic and inorganic compounds in soil. Example of mercury cycle with emphasis on the pathways in soils (gray boxes). (after Leterme et al. 2014).

4435
4436



4437
4438 Figure 10 Relative water saturation in soil around a root system taking up water simulated with R-
4439 SWMS.
4440



4441

4442

4443

4444

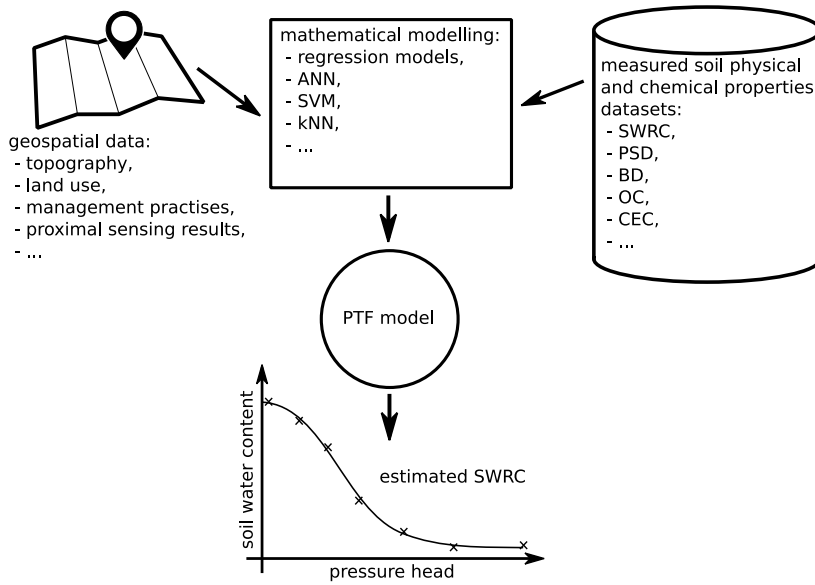
4445

4446

4447

4448

Figure 11 Illustration of the effect of uncertainty of pesticide fate parameters on the predicted cumulative distribution of leachate concentrations in a certain region. Uncertainty about pesticide fate parameters may lead to large variations in predictions at a certain location (i.e. difference between maps of predicted concentrations). Considering the distribution of concentrations in the whole region, uncertainty in pesticide fate parameters leads to a wider distribution (blue solid curve) than in case fixed or deterministic parameters are considered (red dashed curve).



4449

4450

4451

4452

4453

4454

Figure 12 Process of the pedotransfer function development.; SWRC – soil water retention curve, PSD – particle size distribution, BD – bulk density, OC – organic carbon content, CEC – cation exchange capacity, ANN – artificial neural network, SVM – support vector machines, kNN – k-nearest neighbor.

Ecosystem services and soil processes	Numerical package to model this ecosystem service or soil process	References
Supporting processes		
Soil formation	SoilGen2	Finke (2012) Finke and Hutson (2008)
	Soil-Landscape Model	McBratney et al. (2006)
	Orthod Model	Hoosbeek and Bryant (1994)
	mARM3D	Cohen (2010)
	MILESD	Vanwalleghem et al. (2013)
Water cycling	HYDRUS 1D	Karimov et al. (2014)
	WaSim-ETH	Krause and Bronstert (2007)
	Community Land Model (CLM)	Wu et al. (2014b)
	SiSPAT-Isotope	Braud et al. (2005)
	SWAP	van Dam et al. (2006)
Nutrient cycling	HP1	Thaysen (2014)
	RothC	Dungait et al. (2012)
	Century	Parton et al. (1993)
	SWAP	Perego et al. (2012), Bonfante et al. (2010)
Biological activity	DEMENT	Allison (2012); Allison (2014)
	Soil food web model	Holtkamp et al. (2011)
Degrading processes		
Salinization	HYDRUS-2D	Ramos et al. (2012)
	UNSATCHEM	Schoups et al. (2006)
	SALTMED	Ragab (2000); Ragab (2002)
	SODIC	van der Zee et al. (2014)
	SWAP	Jiang et al. (2011)
Erosion	KINEROS	Nedkov and Burkhard (2012)
	WEPP	Savabi et al. (1995)
	SIDASS	Simota et al. (2005)
Compaction	STICS/COMPSOIL	Défosse et al. (2014)
	SOCOMO	Van den Akker (2004)
	SOILFLEX	Keller et al. (2007)

Regulating services		
Climate regulation	CLM4.5	Oleson et al. (2013)
	SWAP	Pollacco and Mohanty (2012)
Buffering and filtering	HP1	Leterme et al. (2014)
	SWAP	Bonten et al. (2012)
Recycling of wastes	DSCB Dynamic Soil Composition Balance	Moolenaar et al. (1997), Moolenaar and Beltrami (1998)
	MACRO	Steffens et al. (2015)
	PEARL	Tiktak et al. (2004)
Provisioning services		
Biomass production for food, fiber and energy	APSIM	Robertson et al. (2002) Luo et al. (2005) Yang et al. (2014)
	DSSAT	Pequeno et al. (2014) Shi et al. (1997) Li et al. (2015) Wajid et al. (2014)
	DAISY	Ghaley and Porter (2014)
	ORCHIDEE-STICS	de Noblet-Ducoudré et al. (2004)
	CLM	Oleson et al. (2013)
	SWAP	Kroes and Supit (2011)
	Physical support	Volumetric Soil Model
Slope Stability Model		Arrouays et al. (2014)
BBA		Alonso et al. (1990)
RipRoot		Pollen-Bankhead and Simon (2009)
Soil and habitat	Self_org	Crawford et al. (2011)

4456

4457 Table 2 Examples of studies in which soil models have been used to quantify ecosystem services

4458

4459

	Key challenges to modeling soil supporting and degrading processes
Challenge 1	To quantify and predict the development of soil heterogeneity across a broad range of space and time scales. This includes soil structural dynamics and preferential flow paths.
Challenge 2	To better integrate key biophysical processes including spatial consideration of organismal traits with ecological interactions at appropriate spatial and temporal scales.
Challenge 3	To better link nutrient dynamics and availability in soils with hydrological and biogeochemical processes.
Challenge 4	To combine soil modeling tools with management tools to better assess degradative processes.
Challenge 5	To improve water, erosion and sediment routing modeling in complex landscapes.

4460

4461 Table 2 Key Challenges to modeling soil supporting and degrading processes

4462

4463

	Key challenges to soil modeling and ecosystem services
Challenge 1	To include soil structural dynamics in the prediction of the soil's buffering and filtering capacity.
Challenge 2	To link soil habitat and biodiversity modeling to soil function models.
Challenge 3	To model soil formation processes over long time scales.
Challenge 4	To upscale rhizosphere processes and soil-root interactions to the field scale.
Challenge 5	To integrate new understanding of structure dynamics, chemical and biological processes into operational biosphere models, such as those predicting GHG emissions.

4464 Table 3 Key challenges to soil modeling and ecosystem services

4465

4466

	Overarching challenges to modeling soil processes
Challenge 1	To effectively exchange soil processes modeling and knowledge across different soil disciplines, and with earth, ecology and plant sciences.
Challenge 2	To build platforms for integrating soil processes from pore- and local scales into field and ultimately global scale land surface models, crop models, climate models and terrestrial models of biogeochemical processes.
Challenge 3	To improve quantification and mechanistic representation of soil biological processes at scales ranging from microbial cells at pores or on root surfaces to the emergence of vegetation patterns over extensive landscapes.
Challenge 4	To develop a framework that allows to differentiate soils based on their functioning properties and include land use and/or tracking changes of supporting/degrading processes towards building spatial maps that quantifying ecosystem services and may contribute to improve the valuation of ecosystem services.

4467 Table 4 Overarching challenges to modeling soil processes

4468